

Ardmore Shipping Corp  
Form 424B5  
November 19, 2018  
**Table of Contents**

**This preliminary prospectus supplement relates to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, but is not complete and may be changed. This preliminary prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus are not an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted and they are not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**Filed Pursuant to Rule 424(b)(5)  
Registration No. 333-213343**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED NOVEMBER 19, 2018**

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**(To Prospectus dated August 26, 2016)**

**ARDMORE SHIPPING CORPORATION**

**\$**

**% Notes due 2023**

We are offering \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of our \_\_\_\_\_ % Notes due 2023 (the Notes or our Notes ). We have granted the underwriters the option, exercisable during the 30-day period beginning on the date of this prospectus supplement, to purchase up to an additional \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of the Notes solely to cover over-allotments. The Notes will bear interest from the date of original issue until maturity at a rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per year. The Notes will mature on November 30, 2023. Interest on the Notes will be payable quarterly in arrears on February 28, May 30, August 30 and November 30 of each year, commencing on February 28, 2019.

We may redeem the Notes at our option, in whole or in part, at any time on or after November 30, 2020 at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount to be redeemed. In addition, we may redeem the Notes in whole, but not in part, at any time at our option, at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount to be redeemed, if certain events occur involving changes in taxation. If we experience specific kinds of changes in control, we must offer to purchase the Notes at a price equal to 101% of their principal amount. In all such cases, holders will also be entitled to receive accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the applicable purchase or redemption date. See Description of Notes.

The Notes will be our senior unsecured obligations and will rank senior in right of payment to any of our future subordinated debt and equally in right of payment with all of our existing and future senior unsecured debt. The Notes will be effectively subordinated in right of payment to our existing and future secured debt, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt, and will be structurally subordinated in right of payment to all existing and future debt and other liabilities (including trade payables) of our subsidiaries. The Notes will be issued in minimum denominations of \$25 and integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof.

**Investing in the Notes involves risks. Please read Risk Factors beginning on page S-11 of this prospectus supplement and page 4 of the accompanying base prospectus for a discussion of certain risks that you should consider in connection with an investment in the Notes.**

**Neither the United States Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus supplement or the accompanying base prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

We expect that delivery of the Notes will be made to investors on or about November , 2018, through the book-entry system of The Depository Trust Company for the accounts of its participants, including Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V., as operator of the Euroclear system, and Clearstream Banking, *société anonyme*.

	<b>Per Note</b>	<b>Total</b>
Public offering price	\$	\$
Underwriting discount and commission <sup>(1)</sup> <sup>(2)</sup>	\$	\$
Proceeds to us, before expenses <sup>(2)</sup>	\$	\$

(1) We have granted the underwriters the option, exercisable during the 30-day period beginning on the date of this prospectus supplement, to purchase up to an additional \$ aggregate principal amount of the Notes solely to cover over-allotments. If the underwriters exercise the option in full, the total underwriting discounts and commissions payable by us will be \$ and total proceeds to us before other expenses will be \$ .

(2) See Use of Proceeds and Underwriting.

We will apply for the listing of the Notes on the New York Stock Exchange (the NYSE ). If approved for listing, trading on the NYSE is expected to commence within 30 days after the Notes are first issued.

*Joint Book-Running Managers*

**Morgan Stanley**

**Stifel**

*Co-Managers*

**B. Riley FBR**

**BB&T Capital Markets**

**Janney Montgomery Scott**

**Ladenburg Thalmann**

**The date of this prospectus supplement is , 2018.**

Table of Contents

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**Prospectus Supplement**

	<b>Page</b>
<u>ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT</u>	S-ii
<u>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u>	S-ii
<u>SUMMARY</u>	S-1
<u>THE OFFERING</u>	S-6
<u>RISK FACTORS</u>	S-11
<u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u>	S-34
<u>CAPITALIZATION</u>	S-35
<u>DESCRIPTION OF NOTES</u>	S-36
<u>DESCRIPTION OF OTHER INDEBTEDNESS</u>	S-62
<u>MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS</u>	S-65
<u>MARSHALL ISLANDS TAX CONSIDERATIONS</u>	S-68
<u>UNDERWRITING</u>	S-69
<u>EXPENSES</u>	S-74
<u>SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF CIVIL LIABILITIES</u>	S-74
<u>LEGAL MATTERS</u>	S-74
<u>EXPERTS</u>	S-75
<u>WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</u>	S-75
<u>INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE</u>	S-75
<u>GLOSSARY OF SHIPPING TERMS</u>	S-77

**Base Prospectus**

	<b>Page</b>
<u>ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</u>	2
<u>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u>	3
<u>ARDMORE SHIPPING CORPORATION</u>	3
<u>RISK FACTORS</u>	4
<u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u>	6
<u>RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES</u>	6
<u>DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK</u>	7
<u>MARSHALL ISLANDS COMPANY CONSIDERATIONS</u>	12
<u>DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</u>	16
<u>DESCRIPTION OF CONVERTIBLE DEBT SECURITIES</u>	24
<u>USE OF GLOBAL SECURITIES</u>	33
<u>DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS</u>	35
<u>DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</u>	36
<u>SELLING SECURITYHOLDER</u>	37
<u>TAX CONSIDERATIONS</u>	38
<u>PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</u>	44
<u>SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF CIVIL LIABILITIES</u>	47

<u>LEGAL MATTERS</u>	47
<u>EXPERTS</u>	47
<u>WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</u>	48
<u>INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE</u>	49
<u>EXPENSES</u>	50

S-i

**Table of Contents**

**ALTERNATIVE SETTLEMENT DATE**

It is expected that delivery of the Notes will be made against payment therefor on or about the closing date specified on the cover page of this prospectus, which will be the fifth business day following the date of pricing of the Notes (this settlement cycle being referred to as T+5). Under Rule 15c6-1 of the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act), trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in two business days, unless the parties to a trade expressly agree otherwise. Accordingly, purchasers who wish to trade the Notes on the initial pricing date of the Notes or the next succeeding business day will be required, by virtue of the fact that the Notes initially will settle in T+5, to specify alternative settlement arrangements at the time of any such trade to prevent a failed settlement. Purchasers of the Notes who wish to trade the Notes prior to the delivery of the Notes hereunder should consult their own advisors.

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

This document is in two parts. The first part is the prospectus supplement, which describes the specific terms of this offering. The second part is the accompanying base prospectus, which gives more general information, some of which may not apply to this offering. Generally, when we refer to the prospectus, we are referring to both parts combined. If information in the prospectus supplement conflicts with information in the accompanying base prospectus, you should rely on the information in this prospectus supplement.

Any statement made in this prospectus or in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus supplement or in any subsequently filed document that is also incorporated by reference into this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will be deemed not to constitute a part of this prospectus except as so modified or superseded.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Neither we nor any of the underwriters have authorized anyone else to provide you different information. If anyone provides you with additional, different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are not offering these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus or any free writing prospectus, as well as the information we previously filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the SEC) that is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, is accurate as of any date other than its respective date. We may disclose material changes in our affairs in an amendment to this prospectus, a free writing prospectus or a future filing with the SEC incorporated by reference into this prospectus.

You should read carefully this prospectus, any related free writing prospectus, and the additional information described under the headings **Where You Can Find More Information** and **Incorporation of Documents by Reference**.

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This prospectus supplement and the documents incorporated by reference herein contain certain forward-looking statements as such term is defined in Section 21E of the Exchange Act and Section 27A of the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the Securities Act), concerning our operations, cash flows, and financial position. All statements, other than statements of historical fact, included in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus and any free writing prospectus are forward-looking statements. The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995, as amended, provides a safe harbor for forward-looking statements to encourage companies to provide prospective information about themselves so long as they identify these statements as forward-looking and provide meaningful cautionary

statements identifying important factors that could cause

S-ii

**Table of Contents**

actual results to differ from the projected results. In addition, we and our representatives may from time to time make other oral or written statements that are also forward-looking statements. Such statements include, in particular, statements about our plans, strategies, business prospects, changes and trends in our business, and the markets in which we operate. In some cases, you can identify the forward-looking statements by the use of words such as may, will, could, should, would, expect, plan, anticipate, intend, forecast, believe, estimate, predict, continue or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology.

Forward-looking statements are made based upon management's current plans, expectations, estimates, assumptions and beliefs concerning future events affecting us. Forward-looking statements in this prospectus supplement or incorporated by reference herein include, among others, statements addressing such matters as:

our future operating or financial results;

global and regional economic and political conditions;

the strength of national economies and currencies;

general market conditions;

our vessel acquisitions and upgrades, our business strategy and expected capital spending or operating expenses, including bunker prices, drydocking and insurance costs and our ability to grow our staff as our fleet expands;

competition in the tanker industry;

shipping market trends and general market conditions, including fluctuations in charter rates and vessel values and changes in demand for and the supply of tanker vessel capacity;

charter counterparty performance;

changes in governmental rules and regulations or actions taken by regulatory authorities;

our financial condition and liquidity, including our ability to manage our near-term liquidity needs and to obtain financing in the future to fund capital expenditures, acquisitions, refinancing of existing indebtedness and other general corporate activities;

our ability to comply with covenants in financing arrangements;

our exposure to inflation;

vessel breakdowns and instances of off-hires;

future dividends;

our ability to enter into fixed-rate charters after our current charters expire and our ability to earn income in the spot market;

our expectations of the availability of vessels to purchase, the time it may take to construct new vessels, and vessels' useful lives;

potential sale and leaseback and vessel disposition transactions, including the status of discussions or negotiations relating to any such transactions and whether any such transactions will be completed;

our ability to comply with regulatory requirements or maritime self-regulatory organizations' requirements and the cost of such compliance, including, among other things, the International Maritime Organization (IMO) 2020 fuel regulations; and

our intended use of proceeds.

Forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and assumptions, including those risks discussed in Risk Factors set forth in this prospectus supplement and those risks discussed in other reports we file with the SEC and that are incorporated into this prospectus by reference, including, without limitation, our



**Table of Contents**

Annual Report on Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2017 (our 2017 Annual Report ), our Report on Form 6-K for the three months ended March 31, 2018, our Report on Form 6-K for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and our Report on Form 6-K for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2018. The risks, uncertainties and assumptions involve known and unknown risks and are inherently subject to significant uncertainties and contingencies, many of which are beyond our control. We caution that forward-looking statements are not guarantees and that actual results could differ materially from those expressed or implied in the forward-looking statements. Any of these factors or a combination of these factors could materially affect our business, results of operations and financial condition and the ultimate accuracy of the forward-looking statements. Factors that might cause future results to differ include, among others, the following:

changes in demand for and the supply of tanker vessel capacity;

changes in the projections of trading of the Company's vessels;

fluctuations in oil prices;

changes in the markets in which we operate;

availability of financing and refinancing;

changes in general domestic and international political and trade conditions, including tariffs;

changes in governmental or maritime self-regulatory organizations' rules and regulations or actions taken by regulatory authorities;

changes in economic and competitive conditions affecting our business, including market fluctuations in charter rates and charterers' abilities to perform under charters;

potential disruption of shipping routes due to accidents, piracy or political events;

potential liability from future litigation and potential costs due to environmental damage and vessel collisions;

the length and number of off-hire periods and dependence on third-party managers; and

other factors discussed under the Risk Factors section of this prospectus supplement.

Except to the extent required by applicable law or regulation, we undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statement to reflect events or circumstances after the date on which such statement is made or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events. New factors emerge from time to time, and it is not possible for us to predict all of these factors. In addition, we cannot assess the effect of each such factor on our business or the extent to which any factor, or combination of factors, may cause actual results to be materially different from those contained in any forward-looking statement and, accordingly, you should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements.

S-iv

**Table of Contents**

**SUMMARY**

*This section summarizes some of the key information that appears in other sections of this prospectus supplement. It may not contain all of the information that may be important to you in making your investment decision. You should review carefully the risk factors and the more detailed information and financial statements included in, or incorporated by reference into, this prospectus before making an investment decision. Unless the context otherwise requires, when used in this prospectus, the terms Ardmore, Ardmore Shipping, the Company, we, our and us refer to Ardmore Shipping Corporation and its consolidated subsidiaries, except that those terms, when used in this prospectus in connection with the Notes, shall mean specifically Ardmore Shipping Corporation. The financial information included in this prospectus represents our financial information and the operations of our subsidiaries and jointly-owned management company. Unless otherwise indicated, all references to currency amounts in this prospectus are in U.S. dollars and financial information presented in this prospectus is prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ( U.S. GAAP ). Please read the Glossary of Shipping Terms included in this prospectus for definitions of certain terms used in this prospectus that are commonly used in the shipping industry.*

**The Company**

We are Ardmore Shipping Corporation. We provide seaborne transportation of petroleum products and chemicals worldwide to oil majors, national oil companies, oil and chemical traders, and chemical companies, with our modern, fuel-efficient fleet of mid-size product and chemical tankers. Our current fleet consists of 28 vessels, all of which are in operation.

We commenced business operations in April 2010 with the goal of building an enduring product and chemical tanker company that emphasizes disciplined capital allocation, service excellence, innovation and operational efficiency through our focus on high-quality, fuel-efficient vessels. We are led by a team of experienced senior managers who have previously held senior management positions with highly-regarded public shipping companies and financial institutions.

We are strategically focused on modern, fuel-efficient, mid-size product and chemical tankers. We actively pursue opportunities to exploit the overlap we believe exists between the clean petroleum product ( CPP ) and chemical sectors in order to enhance earnings, and also seek to engage in more complex CPP trades, such as multi-grade and multi-port loading and discharging operations, where our knowledge of chemical operations is beneficial to our CPP customers.

Our fuel-efficient operations are designed to enhance our investment returns and provide value-added service to our customers. We believe we are at the forefront of fuel efficiency and emissions reduction trends and are well positioned to capitalize on these developments with our fleet of Eco-design and Eco-mod vessels. Our acquisition strategy is to continue to build our fleet with Eco-design newbuildings and modern second-hand vessels that can be upgraded to Eco-mod.

We are an integrated shipping company. The majority of our fleet is technically managed by a combination of Ardmore Shipping Services (Ireland) Limited and Anglo Ardmore Ship Management Limited, a joint venture entity that is 50% owned by us, and we also retain a third-party technical manager for some of our vessels. We have a resolute focus on both high-quality service and efficient operations, and we believe that our corporate overhead and operating expenses are among the lowest of our peers.

We are commercially independent, as we have no blanket employment arrangements with third-party or related-party commercial managers. Through our in-house chartering and commercial team, we market our services directly to a

broad range of customers, including oil majors, national oil companies, oil and chemical

S-1

## **Table of Contents**

traders, chemical companies, and pooling service providers. We monitor the tanker markets to understand and best utilize our vessels and may change our chartering strategy to take advantage of changing market conditions.

We have no related-party transactions concerning our vessel operations or vessel sale and purchase activities. Certain of our wholly-owned subsidiaries carry out management and administrative services, with Ardmore Shipping (Bermuda) Limited being our principal executive office and providing Ardmore with corporate and executive management services and associated functions, Ardmore Shipping Services (Ireland) Limited providing corporate and accounting administrative services, as well as technical operations services and fleet administration, and Ardmore Shipping (Asia) Pte. Limited and Ardmore Shipping (Americas) LLC providing our commercial management and chartering services.

## **Recent Developments**

### *Vessel Transactions.*

On January 23, 2018, we took delivery of the *Ardmore Sealancer*, a 2008 MR product tanker built at Onomichi, Japan. Upon delivery, and repositioning, the vessel commenced employment in the spot market. The vessel was partly financed under a Japanese operating lease arrangement which was completed on January 30, 2018.

We are negotiating for the potential sale of one of the older vessels in our fleet. However, there is no assurance that such sale will be completed.

### *Financing Transactions.*

On June 26, 2018, two of our subsidiaries completed the sale and leaseback (under a finance lease arrangement) of the *Ardmore Endurance* and *Ardmore Enterprise* respectively, resulting in net proceeds after repayment of outstanding debt, of \$10.3 million. As part of this arrangement, the aggregate senior debt outstanding on the vessels of \$29.9 million was repaid in full on June 26, 2018. The finance leases are scheduled to expire in 2025 and include a mandatory purchase obligation for Ardmore to repurchase the vessels, as well as purchase options exercisable by Ardmore, which Ardmore could elect to exercise at an earlier date.

On August 31, 2018, we entered into an open market sale agreement with Evercore Group L.L.C., Jefferies LLC and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, as sales agents, pursuant to which we may offer and sell our common shares having an aggregate offering price of up to \$25,000,000 from time to time through the sales agents.

On October 29, 2018, two of our subsidiaries completed the sale and leaseback (under a finance lease arrangement) of the *Ardmore Dauntless* and *Ardmore Defender*, two 2015 built 37,000 Dwt Eco-design IMO 2 products and chemical tankers, with Ocean Yield ASA. The lease agreements are for a period of 12 years and we have options to repurchase each vessel at various stages prior to maturity. The other terms and conditions of the lease agreements are in line with our existing debt facilities.

On October 31, 2018, two of our subsidiaries completed the sale and leaseback (under a finance lease arrangement) of the *Ardmore Explorer* and *Ardmore Encounter*, two 2014 built 50,000 Dwt Eco-design MR tankers, with a top tier Asian financier. The lease agreements are for a period of seven years and we have options to repurchase each vessel at various stages prior to maturity. The other terms and conditions of the lease agreements are in line with our existing debt facilities.

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

We intend to enter into additional sale and leaseback transactions and are in various stages of discussions and negotiations for certain additional transactions. However, there is no assurance any such sale and leaseback transactions will be negotiated or completed.

S-2

**Table of Contents****Current Fleet**

As of November 1, 2018, our fleet consisted of 28 operating vessels (of which 21 are Eco-design and 7 are Eco-mod). Please read "Glossary of Shipping Terms" beginning on page S-77 of this prospectus supplement for definitions of terms used below. The average age of our fleet as of November 1, 2018 was 6.3 years.

<b>Vessel Name</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Dwt Tonnes</b>	<b>IMO</b>	<b>Built</b>	<b>Country</b>	<b>Flag</b>	<b>Specification</b>
<i>Ardmore Seavalliant</i>	Product/Chemical	49,998	2/3	Feb-13	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seaventure</i>	Product/Chemical	49,998	2/3	Jun-13	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seavantage</i>	Product/Chemical	49,997	2/3	Jan-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seavanguard</i>	Product/Chemical	49,998	2/3	Feb-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Sealion</i>	Product/Chemical	49,999	2/3	May-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seafox</i>	Product/Chemical	49,999	2/3	Jun-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seawolf</i>	Product/Chemical	49,999	2/3	Aug-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seahawk</i>	Product/Chemical	49,999	2/3	Nov-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Endeavour</i>	Product/Chemical	49,997	2/3	Jul-13	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Enterprise</i>	Product/Chemical	49,453	2/3	Sep-13	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Endurance</i>	Product/Chemical	49,466	2/3	Dec-13	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Encounter</i>	Product/Chemical	49,478	2/3	Jan-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Explorer</i>	Product/Chemical	49,494	2/3	Jan-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Exporter</i>	Product/Chemical	49,466	2/3	Feb-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Engineer</i>	Product/Chemical	49,420	2/3	Mar-14	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Seafarer</i>	Product/Chemical	45,744	3	Aug-04	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Seatrader</i>	Product	47,141		Dec-02	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Seamaster</i>	Product/Chemical	45,840	3	Sep-04	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Seamariner</i>	Product/Chemical	45,726	3	Oct-06	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Sealancer</i>	Product	47,451		Jun-08	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Sealeader</i>	Product	47,463		Aug-08	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Sealifter</i>	Product	47,472		Jul-08	Japan	MI	Eco-mod
<i>Ardmore Dauntless</i>	Product/Chemical	37,764	2	Feb-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Defender</i>	Product/Chemical	37,791	2	Feb-15	Korea	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Cherokee</i>	Product/Chemical	25,215	2	Jan-15	Japan	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Cheyenne</i>	Product/Chemical	25,217	2	Mar-15	Japan	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Chinook</i>	Product/Chemical	25,217	2	Jul-15	Japan	MI	Eco-design
<i>Ardmore Chippewa</i>	Product/Chemical	25,217	2	Nov-15	Japan	MI	Eco-design
<b>Total</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>1,250,019</b>					

Our chartering policy is to maintain a broad range of operating and potential spot and time charter customers and pooling alternatives in order to maximize commercial flexibility and manage risk depending on prevailing market conditions and outlook. In particular, we seek customers who place value on our proactive approach to fuel efficiency.

**Competitive Strengths**

We believe that we possess a number of competitive strengths that will enable us to maximize returns and capitalize on growth opportunities in the product and chemical tanker sectors, including:

**Experienced Management Team with an Established Track Record.** Our senior management team and the Chairman of the board of directors have an aggregate of over 140 years of experience in maritime and related activities. Our Chief Executive Officer, Anthony Gurnee, has over 30 years of

S-3



## Table of Contents

experience in the maritime industry, including as part of the senior management team that guided Teekay Corporation's turnaround in the 1990s and laid the foundation for its future growth with a series of public bond issuances and its initial public offering. The Chairman of our board of directors, Reginald Jones, was formerly the global head of transportation investment banking at Goldman Sachs & Co. where he led numerous shipping mergers and acquisitions and capital markets transactions. Our Chief Operating Officer, Mark Cameron, has held a wide range of operational and strategic management positions within Teekay Corporation, AP Moller Maersk and Safmarine over a 20-year onshore career. Additionally, he served 11 years at sea and achieved the rank of Chief Engineer. Our Chief Financial Officer, Paul Tivnan, was formerly with Ernst & Young in its financial services tax practice specializing in international tax structuring for banking and financial institutions. Our Chief Commercial Officer, Gernot Ruppelt, joined Ardmore with 12 years of commercial experience in the maritime business. He previously worked as a Tanker Broker at Poten & Partners, New York, and for Maersk Broker and AP Moller Maersk in Copenhagen, Singapore and Germany.

**Attractive, Fuel-Efficient Fleet.** Consistent with our strategy of focusing on fuel-efficient vessels, we have assembled a modern, high-quality fleet of Eco-design or Eco-mod Japanese and Korean-built tankers. As of November 1, 2018, the average age of our current fleet was 6.3 years.

**Focus on Service Excellence and Innovation.** Since inception, we have focused on service excellence through high-quality operations and innovation relating to fuel efficiency improvements, including the acquisition of Eco-design newbuildings and performing Eco-mod improvements to second-hand vessels we acquire. Central to our approach is accurate vessel speed and fuel consumption measurement and continuous operational improvement. We believe that this focus has enabled us to negotiate favorable time charter rates in the past and to benefit directly in spot trading and pool arrangements. In addition, we apply our operational experience and expertise in chemical tanker operations to complex CPP trades to support our customers' needs.

**Low Cost Operation.** We believe our overhead cost per vessel and operating expenses per vessel are among the lowest of our industry peers. We have achieved these results by purchasing high-quality second-hand vessels, building ships in modern, reputable shipyards and remaining focused on two closely related business sectors. We have further achieved low operating expenses per vessel by using our operations management team to closely supervise and augment our jointly owned ship manager and third-party technical managers, which provide scale benefits with managed fleets each in excess of 800 vessels.

**Financial Flexibility.** We have capitalized our business in a financially conservative manner and have been able to raise debt and equity capital to fund growth. We were able to do so during the current severe shipping downturn that led to the reorganization or bankruptcy of many leading shipping companies and prevented many other operators from taking advantage of attractive investment opportunities.

### **Business Strategy**

Our objective is to solidify our position as a market leader in modern, fuel-efficient, mid-size product and chemical tankers by engaging in well-timed growth and utilizing our operational expertise and quality-focused approach to provide value-added services to our customers. The key elements of our business strategy include:

**Disciplined Capital Allocation and Well-Timed Growth.** We have a diligent and patient approach to capital allocation and expanding our fleet and we are selective as to the quality of ships we seek to acquire. We believe that our commitment and selectivity in growing our fleet has been instrumental in building our reputation for quality and service excellence. We also believe that financial flexibility and well-timed growth of quality ships is key to delivering superior returns.

S-4

## Table of Contents

**Focus on Modern, High-Quality Mid-Size Product and Chemical Tankers.** We maintain a very modern fleet, with all vessels built in high-quality yards in South Korea or Japan. The average sizes of our product and chemical tankers are substantially similar to the median sizes of the global fleets for product tankers and chemical tankers. We have developed our strategic focus around mainstream tanker sizes that are readily employed and actively traded worldwide in broad and deep markets. In addition, as a result of the overlap between the product and chemical sectors, we believe that our fleet composition enables us to take advantage of opportunities, both operationally and strategically, while also providing investment diversification.

**Optimizing Fuel Efficiency.** The shipping industry is experiencing a steady increase in fuel efficiency, and we intend to remain at the forefront of this development. Our Eco-design vessels incorporate many of the latest technological improvements, such as electronically-controlled engines, more efficient hull forms matched with energy efficient propellers, and decreased water resistance. Our Eco-mod vessels have improved propulsion efficiency and decreased water resistance. In addition, we achieve further improvements through engine diagnostics and operational performance monitoring.

**Commercial Independence, Flexibility and Diversification.** Through our in-house chartering and commercial team and our ship management joint venture arrangement, we have an integrated operating platform resulting in leading commercial and operational performance. We maintain a broad range of existing and potential spot customers, as well as pooling alternatives and potential time-charter customers, to maximize commercial flexibility and customer diversification. Maintaining outstanding customer service is a cornerstone of our business and we seek customers who value our active approach to fuel efficiency and service delivery.

**Low Cost Structure.** We have established a solid foundation for growth while cost-effectively managing our operating expenses and corporate overhead. We intend to grow our staff as needed and to realize further economies of scale as our fleet expands. At the core of our business philosophy is the belief that well-run companies can deliver high quality service and achieve efficiency simultaneously, through hands-on management, effective communication with employees, and constant re-evaluation of budgets and operational performance.

### **Corporate Structure**

Ardmore Shipping Corporation was incorporated under the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands on May 14, 2013. We commenced business operations through our predecessor company, Ardmore Shipping LLC ( ASLLC ), on April 15, 2010. We maintain our principal executive and management offices at Belvedere Building, 69 Pitts Bay Road, Ground Floor, Pembroke, HM08, Bermuda. Our telephone number at these offices is +1 441 405 7800. Our website address is [www.ardmoreshipping.com](http://www.ardmoreshipping.com). The information contained on our website is not part of this prospectus.

**Table of Contents**

**THE OFFERING**

The summary below describes the principal terms of the Notes. Certain of the terms and conditions described below are subject to important limitations and exceptions. Please read [Description of Notes](#) for a more detailed description of the terms and conditions of the Notes.

Issuer	Ardmore Shipping Corporation, a Marshall Islands corporation.
Securities Offered	\$            million aggregate principal amount (plus up to an additional \$            million aggregate principal amount pursuant to an option granted to the underwriters) of our            % Notes due 2023, issued in minimum denominations of \$25 and integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof.
Issue Date	, 2018.
Maturity Date	The Notes will mature on November 30, 2023.
Interest	The Notes will bear interest from the date of original issue until maturity at a rate of            % per year, payable quarterly in arrears on February 28, May 30, August 30 and November 30, commencing on February 28, 2019.
Use of Proceeds	We intend to use the net proceeds of the sale of our Notes, which are expected to total approximately \$            million after deducting underwriting discounts, commissions and estimated offering expenses (or approximately \$            million if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional Notes in full), for general corporate purposes, which may include funding future vessel acquisitions. Please read <a href="#">Use of Proceeds</a> .
Ranking	The Notes will be our senior unsecured obligations and will rank senior to any of our future subordinated debt and rank equally in right of payment with all of our existing and future senior unsecured debt. The Notes will effectively rank junior in right of payment to our existing and future secured debt, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such debt, as well as to existing and future debt and other liabilities (including trade payables) of our subsidiaries. Please read <a href="#">Description of Other Indebtedness</a> .

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

No Security or Guarantees

None of our obligations under the Notes will be secured by collateral or guaranteed by any of our subsidiaries, affiliates or any other persons.

Repurchase Upon Change of Control

Upon the occurrence of certain change of control events (as defined in the indenture governing the Notes), you will have the right, as a holder of the Notes, to require us to purchase some or all of your Notes at 101% of the principal amount, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the Change of Control Purchase Date. For

S-6

**Table of Contents**

additional information, please read [Description of Notes](#) [Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes](#).

Redemption

We may redeem the Notes, in whole or in part, at any time on or after November 30, 2020, at a redemption price equal to 100% of the original amount plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the redemption date. Please read [Description of Notes](#) [Optional Redemption](#).

Covenants

The indenture governing our Notes contains certain restrictive covenants, including covenants that require us to limit the amount of debt we incur, maintain a certain minimum net worth and provide certain reports. These covenants are subject to important exceptions and qualifications. For additional information, please read [Description of Notes](#).

Additional Notes

We may reopen our Notes at any time without the consent of the holders of our Notes and issue additional notes with the same terms as our Notes (except the issue price, issue date and initial interest payment date), which will thereafter constitute a single fungible series with our Notes, provided that if the additional notes are not fungible with our Notes for U.S. federal income tax purposes, such additional notes will have a separate CUSIP number.

Ratings

The Notes will not be rated by any nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

Listing

We intend to file an application to list our Notes on the NYSE. If the application is approved, trading of our Notes on the NYSE is expected to begin within 30 days after the original issue date of our Notes. The underwriters have advised us that they intend to make a market in our Notes prior to commencement of any trading on the NYSE. However, the underwriters will have no obligation to do so, and no assurance can be given that a market for our Notes will develop prior to commencement of trading on the NYSE or, if developed, will be maintained.

Form

Our Notes will be represented by one or more permanent global notes, which will be deposited with the trustee as custodian for The Depository Trust Company ( [DTC](#) ) and registered in the name of a nominee designated by [DTC](#). Holders of Notes may elect to hold interests in a global Note only in the manner described in this prospectus supplement. Any such interest may not be exchanged for certificated securities except in limited circumstances described in this prospectus supplement. For additional information, please read [Description of Notes](#) [Book-entry](#)

System; Delivery and Form.

Additional Amounts

Any payments made by us with respect to the Notes will be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of taxes unless required by law. If we are required by law to withhold or deduct

S-7

---

**Table of Contents**

amounts for or on account of tax imposed by a taxing authority of a jurisdiction where we are a resident or certain other jurisdictions with respect to a payment to the holders of the Notes, we will, subject to certain exceptions, pay the additional amounts necessary so that the net amount received by the holders of the Notes after the withholding or deduction is not less than the amount that they would have received in the absence of the withholding or deduction. Please read Description of Notes Additional Amounts.

**Tax Redemption**

In the event of certain changes of law or official positions of certain taxing authorities that trigger requirements discussed immediately above that we pay additional amounts, we may redeem the Notes in whole, but not in part, at any time, upon not less than 15 nor more than 60 days notice at a redemption price of 100% of the principal amount, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, and additional amounts, if any, to, but excluding, the date of redemption. Please read Description of Notes Optional Redemption for Changes in Withholding Taxes.

**Settlement**

Delivery of our Notes offered hereby will be made against payment therefor on or about November , 2018. Please read Alternative Settlement Date.

**Risk Factors**

An investment in our Notes involves risks. You should consider carefully the factors set forth in the section of this prospectus supplement entitled Risk Factors beginning on page S-11 of this prospectus supplement and on page 4 of the accompanying base prospectus to determine whether an investment in our Notes is appropriate for you.

**SUMMARY HISTORICAL CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL AND OPERATING DATA**

The following table presents, in each case for the periods and as of the dates indicated, our summary consolidated financial and operating data. The summary financial and operating data has been prepared on the following basis:

The summary consolidated financial data as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are derived from our audited consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto, which are included in our 2017 Annual Report and incorporated into this prospectus by reference;

The summary condensed consolidated financial data as of September 30, 2018 and for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and 2017 are derived from our unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto, which are included in our Report on Form 6-K for the nine months ended September 30, 2018 and incorporated by reference into this prospectus by reference; and



Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

The summary condensed consolidated financial data as of September 30, 2017 is derived from our unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto, which are included in our Report on Form 6-K for the nine months ended September 30, 2017.

S-8

**Table of Contents**

The following table should be read together with, and is qualified in its entirety by reference to, our financial statements and the notes thereto incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Our historical consolidated financial and operating data may not be indicative of the results of operations or financial position to be expected in the future.

	<b>Nine Months Ended Sept.</b>		<b>For the Years ended Dec. 31,</b>		
	<b>30,</b>				
	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
<b><u>INCOME STATEMENT DATA</u></b>					
<b>REVENUE</b>					
Revenue	\$ 151,758,162	148,168,757	195,935,392	164,403,938	157,882,259
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>					
Commissions and voyage related costs	\$ 68,048,930	55,199,927	72,737,902	37,121,398	30,137,173
Vessel operating expenses	49,667,147	46,786,299	62,890,401	56,399,979	46,416,510
Depreciation	26,343,052	25,625,382	34,271,091	30,091,237	24,157,022
Amortization of deferred dry dock expenditure	2,595,076	1,971,213	2,924,031	2,715,109	2,120,974
General and administrative expenses					
Corporate	10,098,644	9,484,195	11,979,017	12,055,725	10,418,876
Commercial and chartering	2,594,364	2,012,334	2,619,748	2,021,487	329,746
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	<b>\$ 159,347,213</b>	<b>141,079,350</b>	<b>187,422,190</b>	<b>140,404,935</b>	<b>113,580,301</b>
<b>Profit/(loss) from operations</b>	<b>\$ (7,589,051)</b>	<b>7,089,407</b>	<b>8,513,202</b>	<b>23,999,003</b>	<b>44,301,958</b>
Interest expense and finance costs	\$ (18,659,848)	(16,029,527)	(21,380,165)	(17,754,118)	(12,282,704)
Interest income	411,749	327,016	436,195	164,629	15,571
Gain (loss) on disposal of vessels				(2,601,148)	
<b>(Loss) / income before taxes</b>	<b>\$ (25,837,150)</b>	<b>(8,613,104)</b>	<b>(12,430,768)</b>	<b>3,808,366</b>	<b>32,034,825</b>
Income tax	\$ (137,923)	(47,839)	(59,567)	(60,434)	(79,860)
<b>Net (loss) / income</b>	<b>\$ (25,975,073)</b>	<b>(8,660,943)</b>	<b>(12,490,335)</b>	<b>3,747,932</b>	<b>31,954,965</b>
Gain (loss) per share, basic and diluted	\$ (0.79)	(0.26)	(0.37)	0.12	1.23
Weighted average number of common shares, basic and diluted	32,750,259	33,575,610	33,441,879	30,141,891	26,059,122
	<b>As of Sept. 30,</b>			<b>As of Dec. 31,</b>	
	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>	<b>2015</b>
<b><u>BALANCE SHEET DATA</u></b>					

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 33,271,166	45,814,043	39,457,407	55,952,873	40,109,382
Net vessels (including drydock assets)	750,745,990	764,407,890	755,935,008	788,693,708	662,359,307
Total assets	837,322,312	861,710,616	845,539,989	883,642,723	778,197,608
Net assets	363,541,546	395,951,641	380,973,760	404,269,799	347,611,278
Senior debt and finance leases	444,995,170	445,997,730	446,917,589	462,343,756	415,014,345
Paid in capital	399,084,548	401,690,178	390,541,689	401,347,393	337,211,121
Accumulated (deficit)/surplus	\$ (35,543,002)	(5,738,537)	(9,567,929)	2,922,406	10,400,157

S-9

**Table of Contents**

	Nine months ended Sept. 30,		For the years ended Dec. 31,		
	2018	2017	2017	2016	2015
<b>CASHFLOW DATA</b>					
Net cash provided by operating activities	\$ 7,472,914	11,959,149	18,416,228	42,634,500	37,659,686
Net cash used in investing activities	(16,748,834)	(448,229)	(2,282,251)	(122,311,231)	(232,849,734)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	\$ 3,089,679	(21,649,750)	(32,629,443)	95,520,221	175,419,834
	Nine months ended Sept. 30,		For the years ended Dec. 31,		
	2018	2017	2017	2016	2015
<b>TIME CHARTER EQUIVALENT DATA (1)</b>					
MR Tankers Eco-design	\$ 11,506	13,190	12,902	15,098	19,149
MR Tankers Eco-mod	11,333	12,913	12,975	14,318	20,223
Chemical Tankers Eco-design	12,400	11,468	11,949	15,395	17,507
Chemical Tankers Eco-mod				11,839	13,417
Fleet weighted average TCE (2)	\$ 11,816	12,751	12,709	14,785	18,309
	Nine months ended Sept. 30,		For the years ended Dec. 31,		
	2018	2017	2017	2016	2015
<b>FLEET OPERATING DATA</b>					
<b>OPERATING EXPENDITURE</b>					
Fleet operating expenses per day (3)	\$ 6,007	5,923	5,914	6,017	5,976
Technical management fees per day (4)	419	385	384	388	357
<b>Total fleet operating costs per day</b>	<b>\$ 6,426</b>	<b>6,308</b>	<b>6,298</b>	<b>6,405</b>	<b>6,333</b>
Expenditure for drydock (5)	4,178,630	2,866,638	3,809,906	3,099,805	3,314,568
<b>HIRE</b>					
On-hire utilization (6)	99.17%	99.79%	99.61%	99.52%	99.70%

(1) Time Charter Equivalent ( TCE ) daily rate represents net revenues divided by revenue days. Revenue days are the total number of calendar days the vessels are in our possession less off-hire days generally associated with drydocking or repairs. For vessels employed on voyage charters, TCE is the net rate after deducting voyage expenses incurred, divided by revenue days, including among other expenses, all commissions and pool administration fees.

## Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

- (2) Fleet weighted average TCE is total gross revenue for the fleet, after deducting voyage expenses incurred on voyage charters divided by the number of revenue days. Voyage expenses are all expenses related to a particular voyage, including any bunker fuel expenses, port fees, cargo loading and unloading expenses, canal tolls and agency fees.
- (3) Fleet operating expenses per day are routine operating expenses and include crewing, repairs and maintenance, insurance, stores, lube oils and communication costs. They do not include additional costs related to upgrading or enhancement of the vessels that are not capitalized.
- (4) Technical management fees are fees paid to third-party technical managers as well as to our 50%-owned joint venture entity, Anglo Ardmore Ship Management Limited, which provides technical management services to some of our vessels.
- (5) Drydock costs, which include, among other things, costs for in-water surveys, represent direct costs that are incurred as part of vessel drydocking to meet regulatory requirements, expenditures during drydocking that add economic life to the vessel, and expenditures during drydocking that increase the vessel's earnings capacity or improve the vessel's operating efficiency.
- (6) On-hire utilization represents revenue days divided by net operating days (i.e. operating days less scheduled offhire days).

---

**Table of Contents**

**RISK FACTORS**

*Before investing in our Notes, you should carefully consider all of the information included in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus. When evaluating an investment in our Notes, you should carefully consider the following risk factors, together with all other information included in this prospectus, including those risks discussed under the caption Risk Factors in our 2017 Annual Report which is filed with the SEC and incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and information included in any applicable free writing prospectus. If any of these risks were to occur, our business, financial condition, operating results and cash flows could be materially adversely affected. In that case, our ability to pay interest, principal or redeem or repurchase our Notes could be harmed, which may lower the trading price of our Notes. You may lose all or part of your investment.*

**RISKS OF INVESTING IN OUR NOTES**

***Your investment in our Notes is subject to our credit risk.***

Our Notes are unsubordinated and unsecured general obligations of ours and are not, either directly or indirectly, an obligation of a third party. Our Notes will rank on par with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated debt obligations, except as such obligations may be preferred by operation of law. Any payment to be made on our Notes, including the repayment of the principal amount at maturity or any redemption or repurchase date, as applicable, depends on our ability to satisfy our obligations as they come due. As a result, our actual and perceived creditworthiness may affect the market value of our Notes and, in the event we were to default on our obligations, you may not receive the amounts owed to you under the terms of our Notes.

***Our debt levels and lease obligations may limit our flexibility in obtaining additional financing and in pursuing other business opportunities.***

As of September 30, 2018, we had \$445.0 million in aggregate principal amount of outstanding indebtedness (including \$93.7 million in finance lease obligations) and \$0.3 million in aggregate principal amount available under our credit facilities. These amounts exclude the effects of sale-leaseback transactions entered into after September 30, 2018, including the associated increase in finance lease obligations of approximately \$86.7 million and use of net proceeds to repay approximately \$67 million of existing outstanding indebtedness. In addition, in the future we may enter into new debt arrangements, issue additional debt securities or incur additional finance lease obligations. So long as our net borrowings do not equal or exceed 70% of our total assets and we otherwise comply with the terms thereof, the indenture under which the Notes will be issued will permit us to incur additional indebtedness or lease obligations. See Description of Notes Certain Covenants. Our level of debt and lease obligations could have important consequences to us, including the following:

our ability to obtain additional financing, if necessary, for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions or other purposes may be impaired or such financing may not be available on favorable terms;

we may need to use a substantial portion of our cash from operations to make principal and interest payments relating to our debt obligations, reducing the funds that would otherwise be available for operations and future business opportunities;

our debt level could make us more vulnerable than our competitors with less debt to competitive pressures or a downturn in our business or the economy generally; and

our debt level may limit our flexibility in responding to changing business and economic conditions. Our ability to service our debt and lease obligations will depend upon, among other things, our financial and operating performance, which will be affected by prevailing economic conditions and financial, business,

S-11

## **Table of Contents**

regulatory and other factors, some of which are beyond our control. If our results of operations are not sufficient to service our current or future indebtedness and lease obligations, we will be forced to take actions such as reducing dividends, reducing or delaying our business activities, acquisitions, investments or capital expenditures, selling assets, restructuring or refinancing our debt, or seeking additional equity capital or bankruptcy protection. We may not be able to effect any of these remedies on satisfactory terms, or at all.

### ***Our Notes will be unsecured obligations and will be effectively subordinated to our secured debt.***

Our Notes are unsecured and, therefore, will be effectively subordinated to any secured debt we maintain or may incur to the extent of the value of the assets securing the debt. In the event of a bankruptcy or similar proceeding involving us, the assets that serve as collateral will be available to satisfy the obligations under any secured debt before any payments are made on our Notes. As of September 30, 2018, we had \$445.0 million of secured debt outstanding (including \$93.7 million in finance lease obligations), all of which is secured debt of our subsidiaries. We will continue to have the ability to incur additional secured debt and incur additional lease obligations, subject to limitations in our credit facilities and the indenture relating to our Notes.

### ***Our subsidiaries conduct the substantial majority of our operations and own our operating assets, and your right to receive payments on our Notes is effectively subordinated to the rights of the lenders and other creditors of our subsidiaries.***

Our subsidiaries conduct the substantial majority of our operations and own our operating assets. As a result, our ability to make required payments on our Notes depends on the operations of our subsidiaries and our subsidiaries ability to distribute funds to us. Certain of our operating subsidiaries have entered into credit facilities that require a minimum amount of cash to be retained in bank accounts to cover minimum debt service payments for future periods and in some cases, amounts for future operating costs. To the extent our subsidiaries are unable to distribute, or are restricted from distributing, funds to us, we may be unable to fulfill our obligations under our Notes. Our subsidiaries are separate and distinct legal entities and have no obligation, contingent or otherwise, to pay amounts due on our Notes or to make funds available for that purpose. Our Notes will not be guaranteed by any of our subsidiaries.

The rights of holders of our Notes will be structurally subordinated to the rights of our subsidiaries' lenders and other creditors. A default by a subsidiary under its debt obligations would result in a block on distributions from the affected subsidiary to us. Our Notes will be effectively junior to all existing and future liabilities, including trade payables, of our subsidiaries. In the event of a bankruptcy, liquidation or reorganization of any of our subsidiaries, creditors of our subsidiaries will generally be entitled to payment of their claims from the assets of those subsidiaries before any assets are made available for distribution to us. As of September 30, 2018, our subsidiaries had \$445.0 million of outstanding debt (including \$93.7 million in finance lease obligations) all of which is secured. In addition, the indenture under which our Notes will be issued will permit us and our subsidiaries to incur additional debt and lease obligations.

### ***We may not have the ability to raise the funds necessary to purchase our Notes as required upon a change of control and our existing and future debt or lease arrangements may contain limitations on our ability to purchase our Notes.***

Following a change of control as described under "Description of Notes - Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes," holders of Notes will have the right to require us to purchase their Notes for cash. A change of control may also constitute an event of default or prepayment under, and result in the acceleration of the maturity of, our then existing indebtedness or lease arrangements. We cannot assure you that we will have sufficient financial resources, or will be able to arrange financing, to pay the change of control purchase price in cash with respect to any



Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

Notes surrendered by holders for purchase upon a change of control. In addition, restrictions in our then existing credit facilities, lease arrangements or other indebtedness, if any, may

S-12

**Table of Contents**

not allow us to purchase the Notes upon a change of control. Our failure to purchase the Notes upon a change of control when required would result in an event of default with respect to the Notes which could, in turn, constitute a default under the terms of our other indebtedness or lease arrangements, if any. If the repayment of the related indebtedness were to be accelerated after any applicable notice or grace periods, we may not have sufficient funds to repay the indebtedness and purchase the Notes.

***Some significant restructuring transactions may not constitute a change of control, in which case we would not be obligated to purchase the Notes.***

Upon the occurrence of a change of control, you have the right to require us to purchase your Notes. However, the change of control provisions will not afford protection to holders of Notes in the event of certain transactions that could adversely affect the Notes but do not constitute a change of control under the indenture governing the Notes. For example, transactions such as leveraged recapitalizations, refinancings, restructurings or acquisitions initiated by us would not constitute a change of control requiring us to purchase the Notes. In the event of any such transaction, holders of the Notes would not have the right to require us to purchase their Notes, even though each of these transactions could increase the amount of our indebtedness, or otherwise adversely affect our capital structure or any credit ratings, thereby adversely affecting holders of the Notes.

***Our Notes do not have an established trading market, which may negatively affect their market value and your ability to transfer or sell your Notes.***

Our Notes are a new issuance of securities with no established trading market. We intend to apply to list our Notes on the NYSE, but there can be no assurance that the NYSE will accept our Notes for listing. Even if our Notes are approved for listing by the NYSE, an active trading market on the NYSE for our Notes may not develop or, even if it develops, may not last, in which case the trading price of our Notes could be adversely affected and your ability to transfer your Notes will be limited. If an active trading market does develop on the NYSE, our Notes may trade at prices lower than the offering price. The trading price of our Notes will depend on many factors, including:

prevailing interest rates;

the market for similar securities;

general economic and financial market conditions;

our issuance of debt or preferred equity securities; and

our financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

We have been advised by the underwriters that they intend to make a market in our Notes pending any listing of our Notes on the NYSE, but they are not obligated to do so and may discontinue market-making at any time without notice.

***Our Notes have not been rated and ratings of any other of our securities may affect the trading price of our Notes.***

We have not sought to obtain a rating for our Notes and our Notes may never be rated. It is possible, however, that one or more rating agencies might independently determine to assign a rating to our Notes or that we may elect to obtain a rating of our Notes in the future. In addition, we may elect to issue other securities for which we may seek to obtain a rating. If any ratings are assigned to our Notes in the future or if we issue other securities with a rating, such ratings, if they are lower than market expectations or are subsequently lowered or withdrawn, or if ratings for such other securities would imply a lower relative value for our Notes, could adversely affect the market for, or the market value of, our Notes. Ratings only reflect the views of the issuing rating agency or agencies and such ratings could at any time be revised downward or withdrawn entirely at the

S-13

**Table of Contents**

discretion of the issuing rating agency. A rating is not a recommendation to purchase, sell or hold any particular security, including our Notes. Ratings do not reflect market prices or suitability of a security for a particular investor and any future rating of our Notes may not reflect all risks related to us and our business, or the structure or market value of our Notes.

***Our ability to pay principal and interest on the Notes will be limited by the amount of cash we generate from operations.***

Our ability to pay principal and interest on the Notes will depend upon the amount of cash we generate from our operations. We may not have sufficient cash available to make such payments. The amount of cash we will have available for payment of principal and interest on the Notes may fluctuate upon, among other things:

the rates we obtain from our charters as well as the rates we may obtain upon the expiration of any charters we may enter into;

the level of our operating costs and capital expenditures;

the number of unscheduled off-hire days and the timing of, and number of days required for, scheduled drydocking of our vessels;

vessel acquisitions and related financings;

prevailing global and regional economic and political conditions;

the effect of governmental regulations and maritime self-regulatory organization standards, including with respect to environmental, health and safety matters, on the conduct of our business; and

changes in the bases of taxation of our activities in various jurisdictions.

Any default in the payment of principal or interest on the Notes would have a material adverse effect on their trading price.

***Servicing our current or future indebtedness and lease obligations limits funds available for other purposes, and if we cannot service our debt, we may lose our vessels.***

Borrowing under our credit facilities and obligations under our lease arrangements require us to dedicate a part of our cash flow from operations to paying interest on our indebtedness under such facilities or obligations under our lease obligations. These payments limit funds available for working capital, capital expenditures and other purposes. Amounts borrowed under our credit facilities bear interest at variable rates. Increases in prevailing rates could increase the amounts that we would have to pay to our lenders, even though the outstanding principal amount remains the same, and our net income and cash flows would decrease. We expect our earnings and cash flow to vary from year to

year due to the cyclical nature of the tanker industry. If we do not generate or reserve enough cash flow from operations to satisfy our debt or lease obligations, we may have to undertake alternative financing plans, such as:

seeking to raise additional capital;

refinancing or restructuring our debt;

selling tankers; or

reducing or delaying capital investments.

However, these alternative financing plans, if necessary, may not be sufficient to allow us to meet our debt or lease obligations. If we are unable to meet our debt obligations or if some other default occurs under our credit facilities, our lenders could elect to declare that debt, together with accrued interest and fees, to be immediately due and payable and proceed against the collateral vessels securing that debt.

**Table of Contents**

*Our credit facilities and lease arrangements contain, and the indenture governing our Notes will contain, restrictive covenants which among other things, limit the amount of cash that we may use for other corporate activities, which could negatively affect our growth and cause our financial performance to suffer.*

Our credit facilities and lease arrangements impose, and the indenture governing our Notes will impose, operating and financial restrictions on us. These restrictions limit our ability, or the ability of our applicable subsidiaries to, among other things:

pay dividends and make capital expenditures if we do not repay amounts drawn under our credit facilities or if there is another default under our credit facilities;

incur additional indebtedness, including the issuance of guarantees;

to incur additional lease obligations;

create liens on our assets;

change the flag, class or management of our vessels or terminate or materially amend the management agreement relating to each vessel;

sell our vessels;

merge or consolidate with, or transfer all or substantially all our assets to, another person; or

enter into a new line of business.

Certain of our credit facilities and lease obligations require us to maintain specified financial ratios and satisfy financial covenants. These financial ratios and covenants require us, among other things, to maintain minimum solvency, cash and cash equivalents, corporate net worth, working capital, loan-to-value and interest coverage levels and to avoid exceeding corporate leverage maximum.

As a result of these restrictions, we may need to seek consent from our lenders in order to engage in some corporate actions. Our lenders' interests may be different from ours and we may not be able to obtain consent when needed. This may limit our ability to finance our future operations or capital requirements, make acquisitions or pursue business opportunities. Our ability to comply with covenants and restrictions contained in debt instruments and lease arrangements may be affected by events beyond our control, including prevailing economic, financial and industry conditions. If market or other economic conditions deteriorate, we may fail to comply with these covenants. If we breach any of the restrictions, covenants, ratios or tests in our financing agreements or lease arrangements, our obligations may become immediately due and payable, we could be subject to increased rates or fees, and the lenders' commitment under our credit facilities, if any, to make further loans may terminate. A default under financing

agreements or lease arrangements could also result in foreclosure on any of our vessels and other assets securing related loans.

***Our management will have broad discretion over the use of the proceeds to us from this offering and might not apply the proceeds of this offering in ways that increase the value of your investment.***

Our management will have broad discretion to use the net proceeds from this offering and you will be relying on the judgment of our management regarding the application of these proceeds. They might not apply the net proceeds of this offering in ways that maintain or increase the value of your investment. Our management might not be able to yield a significant return, if any, on any investment of these net proceeds. We currently expect to use the net proceeds from this offering for general corporate purposes, which may include repaying indebtedness and funding future vessel acquisitions.

S-15

## **Table of Contents**

*The international nature of our operations may make the outcome of any bankruptcy proceedings difficult to predict.*

We are incorporated under the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands, our principal executive offices are located outside of the United States, a majority of our directors and officers reside outside of the United States, and we conduct operations in countries around the world. Consequently, in the event of any bankruptcy, insolvency, liquidation, dissolution, reorganization or similar proceeding involving us or any of our subsidiaries, bankruptcy laws other than those of the United States could apply. We have no operations in the United States. If we become a debtor under U.S. bankruptcy law, bankruptcy courts in the United States may seek to assert jurisdiction over all of our assets, wherever located, including property situated in other countries. There can be no assurance, however, that we would become a debtor in the United States, or that a U.S. bankruptcy court would be entitled to, or accept, jurisdiction over such a bankruptcy case, or that courts in other countries that have jurisdiction over us and our operations would recognize a U.S. bankruptcy court's jurisdiction if any other bankruptcy court would determine it had jurisdiction.

*Redemption may adversely affect your return on the Notes.*

Beginning November 30, 2020, we have the right to redeem some or all of the Notes prior to maturity. We may redeem the Notes at times when prevailing interest rates may be relatively low. Accordingly, you may not be able to reinvest the amount received upon a redemption in a comparable security at an effective interest rate as high as that of the Notes.

## **RISKS RELATED TO OUR INDUSTRY**

*The tanker industry is cyclical and volatile in terms of charter rates and profitability, which may affect our results of operations and available cash flow.*

The tanker industry is both cyclical and volatile in terms of charter rates and profitability. A prolonged downturn in the tanker industry could adversely affect our ability to charter our vessels or to sell them on the expiration or termination of any charters we may enter into. In addition, the rates payable in respect of any of our vessels operating in a commercial pool, or any renewal or replacement charters that we enter into, may not be sufficient for us to operate our vessels profitably. Fluctuations in charter rates and tanker values result from changes in the supply and demand for tanker capacity and changes in the supply and demand for oil, oil products and chemicals. The factors affecting the supply and demand for tankers are outside of our control, and the nature, timing and degree of changes in industry conditions are unpredictable. Factors that influence demand for tanker capacity include:

supply of and demand for oil, oil products and chemicals;

regional availability of refining capacity;

global and regional economic and political conditions;

the distance oil, oil products and chemicals are to be moved by sea;



changes in seaborne and other transportation patterns;

environmental and other legal and regulatory developments;

currency exchange rates;

weather;

competition from alternative sources of energy; and

international sanctions, tariffs, embargoes, import and export restrictions, nationalizations and wars.

S-16

**Table of Contents**

Factors that influence the supply of tanker capacity include:

the number of newbuilding deliveries;

the scrapping rate of older vessels;

conversion of tankers to other uses;

the price of steel and other raw materials;

the number of vessels that are out of service; and

environmental concerns and regulations.

Historically, the tanker markets have been volatile as a result of a variety of conditions and factors that can affect the price, supply and demand for tanker capacity. Demand for transportation of oil products and chemicals over longer distances was significantly reduced during the last economic downturn. More recently, since 2015 vessel oversupply contributed to continuing low charter rates in the tanker industry. As of September 30, 2018, none of our vessels were on time charters, none operated in a spot-market-oriented commercial pool and 28 of our vessels operated in the spot market directly. If charter rates decline, we may be unable to achieve a level of charter hire sufficient for us to operate our vessels profitably or we may have to operate our vessels at a greater loss.

***Any decrease in spot charter rates in the future or continuation of current rates may adversely affect our results of operations.***

As of September 30, 2018, none of our vessels were employed in a spot market-oriented commercial pool and 28 of our vessels operated directly in the spot market. The earnings of these vessels are based on the spot market charter rates of the particular voyage charter.

We may employ in the spot charter market additional vessels that we may acquire in the future. Where we plan to employ a vessel in the spot charter market, we generally intend to employ the vessel in the spot market directly. Although spot chartering is common in the tanker industry, the spot charter market may fluctuate significantly based upon tanker and oil product/chemical supply and demand, and there have been periods when spot rates have declined below the operating cost of vessels. The successful operation of our vessels in the competitive spot charter market, including within commercial pools, depends upon, among other things, spot-charter rates and minimizing, to the extent possible, time spent waiting for charters and time spent traveling unladen to pick up cargo. If spot charter rates decline, we may be unable to operate our vessels trading in the spot market profitably or meet our obligations, including payments of principal and interest on the Notes. In addition, as charter rates for spot charters are fixed for a single voyage that may last up to several weeks, during periods in which spot charter rates are rising, we will generally experience delays in realizing the benefits from such increases.

Our ability to renew the charters on our vessels on the expiration or termination of our current charters, or to enter into charters on vessels that we may acquire in the future, the charter rates payable under any replacement charters and vessel values will depend upon, among other things, economic conditions in the sectors in which our vessels operate at that time, changes in the supply and demand for vessel capacity and changes in the supply and demand for the seaborne transportation of oil and chemical products.

***Declines in oil prices may adversely affect our growth prospects and results of operations.***

Global crude oil prices have previously experienced significant declines and such declines may reoccur. Any meaningful decrease in oil prices may adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition and our ability to service our indebtedness and pay dividends, as a result of, among other things:

S-17

**Table of Contents**

a possible reduction in exploration for or development of new oil fields or energy projects, or the delay or cancelation of existing projects as energy companies lower their capital expenditures budgets, which may reduce our growth opportunities;

potential lower demand for tankers, which may reduce available charter rates and revenue to us upon chartering or rechartering of our vessels;

customers failing to extend or renew contracts upon expiration;

the inability or refusal of customers to make charter payments to us due to financial constraints or otherwise;  
or

declines in vessel values, which may result in losses to us upon vessel sales or impairment charges against our earnings.

***We have limited current liquidity.***

As of September 30, 2018, we had total liquidity of \$33.3 million in cash and cash equivalents. Our short-term liquidity requirements include the payment of operating expenses, drydocking expenditures, debt servicing costs, any dividends on our shares of common stock, scheduled repayments of long-term debt, as well as funding our other working capital requirements. Our short-term spot charters, including our participation in spot charter pooling arrangements, contribute to the volatility of our net operating cash flow, and thus our ability to generate sufficient cash flows to meet our short-term liquidity needs. We expect to manage our near-term liquidity needs from our working capital, together with expected cash flows from operations and availability under credit facilities. Our existing long-term debt facilities require, among other things, that we maintain minimum cash and cash equivalents based on the greater of a set amount per number of vessels owned and 5% of outstanding debt. The required minimum cash balance as of September 30, 2018, was \$22.2 million. Should we not meet this financial covenant or other covenants in our debt facilities, the lenders may declare our obligations under the applicable agreements immediately due and payable, and terminate any further loan commitments, which would significantly affect our short-term liquidity requirements. A default under financing agreements could also result in foreclosure on any of our vessels and other assets securing the related loans.

***Declines in charter rates and other market deterioration could cause us to incur impairment charges.***

We evaluate the carrying amounts of our vessels to determine if events have occurred that would require an impairment of their carrying amounts. The recoverable amount of vessels is reviewed based on events and changes in circumstances that would indicate that the carrying amount of the assets might not be recovered. The review for potential impairment indicators and projection of future cash flows related to our vessels is complex and requires us to make various estimates, including future charter rates, operating expenses and drydock costs. Historically, each of these items has been volatile. An impairment charge is recognized if the carrying value is in excess of the estimated future undiscounted net operating cash flows. The impairment loss is measured based on the excess of the carrying amount over the fair market value of the asset. An impairment loss could adversely affect our results of operations.

***The market values of our vessels may decrease, which could cause us to breach covenants in our credit facilities and adversely affect our operating results.***

The market values of tankers have historically experienced high volatility. The market prices for tankers declined significantly from historically high levels reached in early 2008 and remain at relatively low levels. The market value of our vessels will fluctuate depending on general economic and market conditions affecting the shipping industry and prevailing charter hire rates, competition from other shipping companies and other modes of transportation, the types, sizes and ages of vessels, applicable governmental regulations and the cost of new buildings. If the market value of our fleet declines, we may not be able to obtain other financing or to incur debt on terms that are acceptable to us or at all. A decrease in vessel values could also cause us to breach certain

S-18

## **Table of Contents**

loan-to-value covenants that are contained in our credit facilities and in future financing agreements that we may enter into from time to time. If we breach such covenants due to decreased vessel values and we are unable to remedy the relevant breach, our lenders could accelerate our debt and foreclose on vessels in our fleet, which would adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

### ***An over-supply of tanker capacity may lead to reductions in charter rates, vessel values, and profitability.***

The market supply of tankers is affected by a number of factors, such as demand for energy resources, oil, petroleum and chemical products, as well as the level of global and regional economic growth. If the capacity of new ships delivered exceeds the capacity of tankers being scrapped and lost, tanker capacity will increase. In addition, the global newbuilding orderbook for LR product tankers, which extends to 2021, and the global newbuilding orderbooks for MR product tankers and chemical tankers, which each extend to 2020, equaled approximately 6.4%, 4.7% and 5.3% of their respective fleets as of October 7, 2018. These orderbooks may also increase further in proportion to their respective existing fleets. If the supply of LR product, MR product or chemical tanker capacity increases and if the demand for such respective tanker capacity does not increase correspondingly, charter rates and vessel values could materially decline. A reduction in charter rates and the value of our vessels may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

### ***Global financial markets and economic conditions may adversely impact our ability to obtain additional financing on acceptable terms, if at all, and otherwise negatively impact our business.***

Global financial markets and economic conditions have experienced, and may continue to experience, volatility. In the last economic downturn, operating businesses in the global economy faced tightening credit, weakening demand for goods and services, deteriorating international liquidity conditions and declining markets. There was a general decline in the willingness of banks and other financial institutions to extend credit, particularly in the shipping industry due to the historically volatile asset values of vessels. Since 2008, lending by financial institutions worldwide decreased significantly compared to the period preceding 2008 and lending to the shipping industry remains restrictive. As the shipping industry is highly dependent on the availability of credit to finance and expand operations, it was negatively affected by this decline.

Also, as a result of concerns about the stability of financial markets generally and the solvency of counterparties specifically, the cost of borrowing funds during the last economic downturn increased as many lenders increased interest rates, enacted tighter lending standards, refused to refinance then existing debt at all or on terms similar to those for the then existing debt and, in some cases, ceased to provide funding to borrowers. Due to these factors, additional financing may not be available if needed by us on acceptable terms or at all. If additional financing is not available when needed or is available only on unfavorable terms, we may be unable to meet our obligations as they come due or we may be unable to enhance our existing business, complete additional vessel acquisitions or otherwise take advantage of business opportunities as they arise.

### ***Changes in fuel, or bunkers, prices may adversely affect our results of operations.***

Fuel, or bunkers, is a significant expense for our vessels employed in the spot market and can have a significant impact on pool earnings. For any vessels which may be employed on time charters, the charterer is generally responsible for the cost and supply of fuel; however, such cost may affect the charter rates we may be able to negotiate for our vessels. Changes in the price of fuel may adversely affect our profitability. The imposition of stringent vessel air emissions requirements, such as the IMO's requirement to reduce the amount of sulfur in fuel globally by 2020, could lead to marine fuel shortages and substantial increases in marine fuel prices. The price and supply of fuel is unpredictable and fluctuates based on events outside our control, including geopolitical developments, supply and

demand for oil and gas, actions by the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) and other oil and gas producers, war and unrest in oil producing countries and

S-19

## **Table of Contents**

regions, regional production patterns and environmental concerns. In addition, fuel price increases may reduce the profitability and competitiveness of our business versus other forms of transportation, such as truck or rail.

### ***Changes in the oil, oil products and chemical markets could result in decreased demand for our vessels and services.***

Demand for our vessels and services in transporting oil, oil products and chemicals depends upon world and regional oil markets. Any decrease in shipments of oil, oil products and chemicals in those markets could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Historically, those markets have been volatile as a result of the many conditions and events that affect the price, production and transport of oil, oil products and chemicals, including competition from alternative energy sources. Past slowdowns of the U.S. and world economies have resulted in reduced consumption of oil and oil products and decreased demand for our vessels and services, which reduced vessel earnings. Additional slowdowns could have similar effects on our operating results and may limit our ability to expand our fleet.

### ***We are subject to complex laws and regulations, including environmental laws and regulations, which can adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.***

Our operations are subject to numerous laws and regulations in the form of international conventions and treaties, national, state and local laws and national and international regulations in force in the jurisdictions in which our vessels operate or are registered, which can significantly affect the ownership and operation of our vessels. Compliance with such laws and regulations, where applicable, may require installation of costly equipment or operational changes and may affect the resale value or useful lives of our vessels. For example, the IMO set January 1, 2020 as the implementation date for vessels to comply with its low sulfur fuel requirement. We may comply with this requirement by either using fuel with low sulfur content, which is more expensive than standard marine fuel, or by upgrading our vessels to provide cleaner exhaust emissions. Cost of compliance with these regulatory changes may be significant. We may also incur additional costs in order to comply with other existing and future regulatory obligations, including costs relating to, among other things: air emissions including greenhouse gases; the management of ballast and bilge waters; maintenance and inspection; elimination of tin-based paint; development and implementation of emergency procedures, Eco-Mod upgrades of secondhand vessels and insurance coverage or other financial assurance of our ability to address pollution incidents. Environmental or other initiatives or incidents (such as the 2010 Deepwater Horizon oil spill in the Gulf of Mexico) may result in additional regulatory initiatives or statutes or changes to existing laws that may affect our operations or require us to incur additional expenses to comply with such regulatory initiatives, statutes or laws. These costs could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

A failure to comply with applicable laws and regulations may, among other things, result in administrative and civil penalties, criminal sanctions or the suspension or termination of our operations. Environmental laws often impose strict, joint and several liability for remediation of spills and releases of oil and hazardous substances, which could subject us to liability without regard to whether we were negligent or at fault. Under the U.S. Oil Pollution Act of 1990, for example, owners, operators and bareboat charterers are jointly, severally and strictly liable for the discharge of oil in U.S. waters, including the 200-nautical mile exclusive economic zone around the United States. An oil spill could also result in significant liability, including fines, penalties, criminal liability, remediation costs and natural resource damages under international and U.S. federal, state and local laws, as well as third-party damages, and could harm our reputation with current or potential charterers of our tankers. We are required to satisfy insurance and financial responsibility requirements for potential oil (including marine fuel) spills and other pollution incidents. Although we have arranged insurance to cover certain environmental risks, there can be no assurance that such insurance will be sufficient to cover all such risks or that any claims will not have a material adverse effect on our



business, results of operations and financial condition.

S-20

**Table of Contents**

***If we fail to comply with international safety regulations, we may be subject to increased liability, which may adversely affect our insurance coverage and may result in a denial of access to, or detention in, certain ports.***

The operation of our vessels is affected by the requirements set forth in the IMO's International Safety Management Code for the Safe Operation of Ships and Pollution Prevention (ISM Code). The ISM Code requires ship owners, ship managers and bareboat charterers to develop and maintain an extensive Safety Management System that includes the adoption of safety and environmental protection policies setting forth instructions and procedures for safe operation and describing procedures for dealing with emergencies. If we fail to comply with the ISM Code or similar regulations, we may be subject to increased liability or our existing insurance coverage may be invalidated or decreased for our affected vessels. Such failure may also result in a denial of access to, or detention of our vessels in, certain ports. The United States Coast Guard and European Union (EU) authorities have indicated that vessels not in compliance with the ISM Code will be prohibited from trading in U.S. and EU ports, which could have an adverse effect on our future performance, results of operations, cash flows and financial position.

***If our vessels suffer damage due to the inherent operational risks of the shipping industry, we may experience unexpected drydocking costs and delays or total loss of our vessels, which may adversely affect our business and financial condition.***

The operation of an ocean-going vessel carries inherent risks. Our vessels and their cargoes will be at risk of being damaged or lost because of events, such as marine disasters, bad weather, business interruptions caused by mechanical failures, grounding, fire, explosions, collisions, human error, war, terrorism, piracy, cargo loss, latent defects, acts of God, climate change and other circumstances or events. Changing economic, regulatory and political conditions in some countries, including political and military conflicts, have from time to time resulted in attacks on vessels, mining of waterways, piracy, terrorism, labor strikes and boycotts. These hazards may result in death or injury to persons, loss of revenues or property, environmental damage, higher insurance rates, damage to our customer relationships, market disruptions, delays or rerouting. In addition, the operation of tankers has unique operational risks associated with the transportation of oil and chemical products. An oil or chemical spill may cause significant environmental damage and the associated costs could exceed the insurance coverage available to us. Compared to other types of vessels, tankers are exposed to a higher risk of damage and loss by fire, whether ignited by a terrorist attack, collision or other causes, due to the high flammability and high volume of the oil or chemicals transported in tankers.

If our vessels suffer damage, they may need to be repaired at a drydocking facility. The costs of drydock repairs are unpredictable and may be substantial. We may have to pay drydocking costs if our insurance does not cover them in full. The loss of revenues while these vessels are being repaired and repositioned, as well as the actual cost of these repairs, may adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, space at drydocking facilities is sometimes limited and not all drydocking facilities are conveniently located. We may be unable to find space at a suitable drydocking facility or our vessels may be forced to travel to a drydocking facility that is not conveniently located to our vessels' positions. The loss of earnings while such vessels wait for space or travel or are towed to more distant drydocking facilities may be significant. The total loss of any of our vessels could harm our reputation as a safe and reliable vessel owner and operator. If we are unable to adequately maintain or safeguard our vessels, we may be unable to prevent any such damage, costs or loss which could negatively impact our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***We operate our vessels worldwide and, as a result, our vessels are exposed to international risks which may reduce revenue or increase expenses.***

The international shipping industry is an inherently risky business involving global operations. Our vessels are at risk of damage or loss because of events such as marine disasters, bad weather, business interruptions caused by

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

mechanical failures, grounding, fire, explosions, collisions, human error, war, terrorism, piracy, cargo loss, latent defects, acts of God, climate change and other circumstances or events. In addition, changing

S-21

---

**Table of Contents**

economic, regulatory and political conditions in some countries, including political and military conflicts, have from time to time resulted in attacks on vessels, mining of waterways, piracy, terrorism, labor strikes and boycotts. These sorts of events could interfere with shipping routes and result in market disruptions, which may reduce our revenue and increase our expenses. Our worldwide operations also expose us to the risk that an increase in restrictions on global trade will harm our business. The adoption of trade barriers by governments may reduce global shipping demand and reduce our revenue.

International shipping is subject to various security and customs inspection and related procedures in countries of origin and destination and transshipment points. Inspection procedures can result in the seizure of the cargo or vessels, delays in the loading, offloading or delivery and the levying of customs duties, fines or other penalties against vessel owners. It is possible that changes to inspection procedures could impose additional financial and legal obligations on us. In addition, changes to inspection procedures could also impose additional costs and obligations on our customers and may, in certain cases, render the shipment of certain types of cargo uneconomical or impractical. Any such changes or developments may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***Acts of piracy on ocean-going vessels could adversely affect our business.***

Acts of piracy have historically affected ocean-going vessels trading in regions of the world such as the South China Sea, the Indian Ocean and in the Gulf of Aden. Sea piracy incidents continue to occur, particularly in the South China Sea, the Strait of Malacca, the Indian Ocean, the Arabian Sea, off the coast of West Africa, the Red Sea, the Gulf of Aden, the Gulf of Guinea, Venezuela, and in certain areas of the Middle East, and increasingly the Sulu Archipelago and Indonesia in the South China Sea, with tankers particularly vulnerable to such attacks. If piracy attacks result in the characterization of regions in which our vessels are deployed as war risk zones or Joint War Committee war and strikes listed areas by insurers, premiums payable for such coverage could increase significantly and such insurance coverage may be more difficult to obtain. In addition, crew costs, including costs which may be incurred to the extent we employ onboard security guards, could increase in such circumstances. We may not be adequately insured to cover losses from these incidents, which could have a material adverse effect on us. In addition, detention or hijacking as a result of an act of piracy against our vessels, or an increase in cost, or unavailability of insurance for our vessels, could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations, cash flows and financial condition and may result in loss of revenues, increased costs and decreased cash flows to our customers, which could impair their ability to make payments to us under our charters.

***Political instability, terrorist or other attacks, war or international hostilities can affect the tanker industry, which may adversely affect our business.***

We conduct most of our operations outside of the United States, and our business, results of operations, cash flows, financial condition and available cash may be adversely affected by the effects of political instability, terrorist or other attacks, war or international hostilities. Continuing conflicts and recent developments in the Middle East, and the presence of the United States and other armed forces in regions of conflict, may lead to additional acts of terrorism and armed conflict around the world, which may contribute to further world economic instability and uncertainty in global financial markets. As a result of these factors, insurers have increased premiums and reduced or restricted coverage for losses caused by terrorist acts generally. Future terrorist attacks could result in increased volatility of the financial markets and negatively impact the United States and global economy. These uncertainties could also adversely affect our ability to obtain additional financing on terms acceptable to us or at all.

In the past, political instability has also resulted in attacks on vessels, mining of waterways and other efforts to disrupt international shipping, particularly in the Arabian Gulf region. Acts of terrorism and piracy have also affected vessels

trading in regions such as the West of Africa, South China Sea, South-East Asia and the Gulf of

S-22

**Table of Contents**

Aden including off the coast of Somalia. Any of these occurrences could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***If our vessels call on ports located in countries that are subject to restrictions imposed by the U.S. government, our reputation and the market for our securities could be adversely affected.***

Although no vessels owned or operated by us have called on ports located in countries subject to country-wide or territory-wide sanctions and embargoes imposed by the U.S. government, such as Iran, North Korea, Syria, the Crimea region, or Cuba, and other authorities or countries identified by the U.S. government or other authorities as state sponsors of terrorism, such as Iran, Sudan, Syria and North Korea, in the future our vessels may call on ports in these countries from time to time on charterers' instructions in violation of contractual provisions that prohibit them from doing so. Sanctions and embargo laws and regulations vary in their application, as they do not all apply to the same covered persons or proscribe the same activities, and such sanctions and embargo laws and regulations may be amended or strengthened over time.

Although we believe that we have been in compliance with all applicable sanctions and embargo laws and regulations, and intend to maintain such compliance, there can be no assurance that we will be in compliance in the future, particularly as the scope of certain laws may be unclear and may be subject to changing interpretations. Any such violation could result in fines, penalties or other sanctions that could severely impact the market for our securities, including the Notes, our ability to access U.S. capital markets and conduct our business and could result in some investors deciding, or being required, to divest their interest, or not to invest, in us.

Our charterers may violate applicable sanctions and embargo laws and regulations as a result of actions that do not involve us or our vessels and those violations could in turn negatively affect our reputation or the ability of our charterers to meet their obligations to us or result in fines, penalties or sanctions.

***The smuggling of drugs or other contraband onto our vessels may lead to governmental claims against us.***

We expect that our vessels will call on ports where smugglers may attempt to hide drugs and other contraband on vessels, with or without the knowledge of crew members. To the extent our vessels are found with contraband, whether inside or attached to the hull of our vessel and whether with or without the knowledge of any of our crew, we may face governmental or other regulatory claims which could have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

***Maritime claimants could arrest our vessels, which would have a negative effect on our business and results of operations.***

Crew members, suppliers of goods and services to a vessel, shippers of cargo and other parties may be entitled to a maritime lien against a vessel for unsatisfied debts, claims or damages. In many jurisdictions, a maritime lien holder may enforce its lien by arresting or attaching a vessel through foreclosure proceedings. The arrest or attachment of one or more of our vessels could interrupt our business or require us to pay significant amounts to have the arrest lifted, which would have a negative effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

In addition, in some jurisdictions, such as South Africa, under the "sister ship" theory of liability, a claimant may arrest both the vessel that is subject to the claimant's maritime lien and any "associated" vessel, which is any vessel owned or controlled by the same owner. Claimants could try to assert "sister ship" liability against one vessel in our fleet for claims relating to another of our vessels.



## **Table of Contents**

### ***Governments could requisition our vessels during a period of war or emergency, which may adversely affect our business and results of operations.***

A government could requisition for title or seize our vessels. Requisition for title occurs when a government takes control of a vessel and becomes the owner. Also, a government could requisition our vessels for hire. Requisition for hire occurs when a government takes control of a vessel and effectively becomes the charterer at dictated charter rates. Generally, requisitions occur during a period of war or emergency. Government requisition of one or more of our vessels could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

### ***Technological innovation could reduce our charter hire income and the value of our vessels.***

The charter hire rates and the value and operational life of a vessel are determined by a number of factors, including the vessel's efficiency, operational flexibility and physical life. Efficiency includes speed, fuel economy and the ability to load and discharge cargo quickly. Flexibility includes the ability to enter various harbors and ports, utilize related docking facilities and pass through canals and straits. The length of a vessel's physical life is related to its original design and construction, its maintenance and the impact of the stress of operations. If new tankers are built that are more efficient or more flexible or have longer physical lives than our vessels, competition from these more technologically advanced vessels could adversely affect the amount of charter hire payments, if any, we receive for our vessels once existing charters expire and the resale value of our vessels could significantly decrease. As a result, our business, results of operations and financial condition could be adversely affected.

### ***If labor or other interruptions are not resolved in a timely manner, they could have a material adverse effect on our business.***

We, indirectly through our technical managers, employ masters, officers and crews to operate our vessels, exposing us to the risk that industrial actions or other labor unrest may occur. A significant portion of the seafarers that crew our vessels are employed under collective bargaining agreements. We may suffer labor disruptions if relationships deteriorate with the seafarers or the unions that represent them. The collective bargaining agreements may not prevent labor disruptions, particularly when the agreements are being renegotiated. If not resolved in a timely and cost-effective manner, industrial action or other labor unrest could prevent or hinder our operations from being carried out as we expect and could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

## **RISKS RELATED TO OUR BUSINESS**

### ***We will be required to make substantial capital expenditures to expand the number of vessels in our fleet and to maintain all our vessels, which will depend on our ability to obtain additional financing.***

Our business strategy is based in part upon the expansion of our fleet through the purchase and ordering of additional vessels. We will be required to make substantial capital expenditures to expand the size of our fleet. We also have incurred significant capital expenditures in previous years to upgrade secondhand vessels we have acquired to Eco-Mod standards.

In addition, we will incur significant maintenance and capital costs for our current fleet and any additional vessels we acquire. A newbuilding vessel must be drydocked within five years of its delivery from a shipyard and vessels are typically drydocked every 30 to 60 months thereafter depending on the vessel, not including any unexpected repairs. We estimate the cost to drydock a vessel is between \$0.75 million and \$1.5 million, depending on the size and condition of the vessel and the location of drydocking relative to the location of the vessel.



We may be required to incur additional debt or raise capital through the sale of equity securities to fund the purchasing of vessels or for drydocking costs from time to time. However, we may be unable to access the

**Table of Contents**

required financing if conditions change and we may be unsuccessful in obtaining financing for future fleet growth. Use of cash from operations will reduce available cash. Our ability to obtain bank financing or to access the capital markets for future offerings may be limited by our financial condition at the time of any such financing or offering as well as by adverse market conditions resulting from, among other things, general economic conditions and contingencies and uncertainties that are beyond our control. If we finance our expenditures by incurring additional debt, our financial leverage could increase.

***We will not be able to take advantage of favorable opportunities in the spot market with respect to vessels employed on medium to long-term time charters, if any.***

As of September 30, 2018, none of our vessels were employed under fixed rate time charter agreements. However, in the future we may enter into fixed rate time charter agreements with respect to our vessels. Vessels committed to medium and long-term time charters may not be available for spot charters during periods of increasing charter hire rates, when spot charters might be more profitable.

***If we do not identify suitable vessels or shipping companies for acquisition or successfully integrate any acquired vessels or shipping companies, we may not be able to grow or effectively manage our growth.***

One of our principal strategies is to continue expanding our operations and our fleet. Our future growth will depend upon a number of factors, some of which may not be within our control. These factors include our ability to:

identify suitable tankers and/or shipping companies for acquisitions at attractive prices;

identify businesses engaged in managing, operating or owning tankers for acquisitions or joint ventures;

integrate any acquired tankers or businesses successfully with our existing operations;

hire, train and retain qualified personnel and crew to manage and operate our growing business and fleet;

identify additional new markets;

improve or expand our operating, financial and accounting systems and controls; and

obtain required financing for our existing and new vessels and operations.

Our failure to effectively identify, purchase, develop and integrate any tankers or businesses could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations. The number of employees that perform services for us and our current operating and financial systems may not be adequate as we implement our plan to expand the size of our fleet and we may not be able to effectively hire more employees or adequately improve those systems. In addition, acquisitions may require additional equity issuances or the incurrence of additional debt (which may require additional amortization payments or impose more restrictive covenants). If we are unable to successfully accommodate any

growth, our business, results of operations and financial condition may be adversely affected.

Growing any business by acquisition presents numerous risks such as undisclosed liabilities and obligations, difficulty in obtaining additional qualified personnel and managing relationships with customers and suppliers and integrating newly acquired vessels and operations into existing infrastructures. The expansion of our fleet may impose significant additional responsibilities on our management and staff, and the management and staff of our technical managers, and may necessitate that we, and they, increase the number of personnel to support such expansion. We may not be successful in executing our growth plans and we may incur significant expenses and losses in connection with such growth plans.

S-25

**Table of Contents**

*Delays in deliveries of vessels we may purchase or order, our decision to cancel an order for purchase of a vessel or our inability to otherwise complete the acquisitions of additional vessels for our fleet, could harm our operating results.*

Although we currently have no vessels on order, under construction or subject to purchase agreements, we expect to purchase and order additional vessels from time to time. The delivery of these vessels could be delayed, not completed or cancelled, which would delay or eliminate our expected receipt of revenues from the employment of these vessels. The seller could fail to deliver these vessels to us as agreed, or we could cancel a purchase contract because the seller has not met its obligations. The delivery of any vessels we may propose to acquire could be delayed because of, among other things, hostilities or political disturbances, non-performance of the purchase agreement with respect to the vessels by the seller, our inability to obtain requisite permits, approvals or financings or damage to or destruction of vessels while being operated by the seller prior to the delivery date.

If the delivery of any vessel is materially delayed or cancelled, especially if we have committed the vessel to a charter under which we become responsible for substantial liquidated damages to the customer as a result of the delay or cancellation, our business, financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

The delivery of vessels we may purchase or order could be delayed because of, among other things:

work stoppages or other labor disturbances or other events that disrupt the operations of the shipyard building the vessels;

quality or other engineering problems;

changes in governmental regulations or maritime self-regulatory organization standards;

lack of raw materials or shortages or delays in receipt of necessary construction materials, such as steel;

bankruptcy or other financial crisis of the shipyard building the vessels;

our inability to obtain requisite financing or make timely payments;

a backlog of orders at the shipyard building the vessels;

hostilities or political or economic disturbances in the countries where the vessels are being built;

weather interference or catastrophic event, such as a major earthquake or fire;

our requests for changes to the original vessel specifications;

nonperformance by counterparties;

our inability to obtain requisite permits or approvals; or

a dispute with the shipyard building the vessels.

***If we purchase and operate second-hand vessels, we will be exposed to increased operating costs that could adversely affect our earnings and, as our fleet ages, the risks associated with older vessels could adversely affect our ability to obtain profitable charters.***

Our current business strategy includes additional growth through the acquisition of new and second-hand vessels. While we typically inspect second-hand vessels prior to purchase, this does not provide us with the same knowledge about their condition that we would have had if these vessels had been built for and operated exclusively by us. Generally, we do not receive the benefit of warranties from the builders of the second-hand vessels that we acquire. These factors could increase the ultimate cost of any second-hand vessel acquisitions by us.

## **Table of Contents**

In general, the costs to maintain a vessel in good operating condition increase with the age of the vessel. Older vessels are typically less fuel-efficient than more recently constructed vessels due to improvements in engine technology. Cargo insurance rates increase with the age of a vessel, making older vessels less desirable to charterers.

Governmental regulations, safety or other equipment standards related to the age of vessels may require expenditures for alterations or the addition of new equipment, to our vessels and may restrict the type of activities in which the vessels may engage. As our vessels age, market conditions may not justify those expenditures or enable us to operate our vessels profitably during the remainder of their useful lives.

### ***An increase in operating or voyage expenses would decrease our earnings and cash flows.***

As of September 30, 2018, none of our vessels were employed under fixed rate time charter agreements. However, in the future we may enter into fixed rate time charter agreements with respect to our vessels. For all vessels operating under time charters, the charterer is primarily responsible for voyage expenses and we are responsible for the vessel operating expenses. Under spot chartering arrangements, we will be responsible for all cost associated with operating the vessel, including operating expenses, voyage expenses, bunkers, port and canal costs.

Our vessel operating expenses include the costs of crew, provisions, deck and engine stores, insurance and maintenance, repairs and spares, which depend on a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. If our vessels suffer damage, they may need to be repaired at a drydocking facility. The costs of drydocking repairs are unpredictable and can be substantial. Increases in any of these expenses would decrease earnings and cash flow.

### ***We may be unsuccessful in competing in the highly competitive international tanker market, which would negatively affect our results of operations and financial condition and our ability to expand our business.***

The operation of tanker vessels and transportation of petroleum and chemical products is extremely competitive, and our industry is capital intensive and highly fragmented. Competition arises primarily from other tanker owners, including major oil companies as well as independent tanker companies, some of which have substantially greater resources than we do. Competition for the transportation of oil products and chemicals can be intense and depends on price, location, size, age, condition and the acceptability of the tanker and its operators to the charterers. We may be unable to compete effectively with other tanker owners, including major oil companies and independent tanker companies.

Our market share may decrease in the future. We may not be able to compete profitably as we seek to expand our business into new geographic regions or provide new services. New markets may require different skills, knowledge or strategies than those we use in our current markets, and the competitors in those new markets may have greater financial strength and capital resources than we do.

### ***We derive a significant portion of our revenues from a limited number of customers, and the loss of any such customers could result in a significant loss of revenues and cash flow.***

We have derived, and we may continue to derive, a significant portion of our revenues and cash flow from a limited number of customers. Vitol Group accounted for more than 10% of our consolidated revenues from continuing operations during the nine months ended September 30, 2018. Vitol Group also accounted for more than 10% of our consolidated revenues from continuing operations during 2017; and each of Vitol Group, Navig8 Group and Trafigura accounted for more than 10% of our consolidated revenues from continuing operations during 2016. No other customer accounted for 10% or more of revenues from continuing operations during any of these periods. The identity of customers which may account for 10% or more of revenues from continuing operations may vary from time to

time.

S-27

## **Table of Contents**

If we lose a key customer or if a customer exercises its right under some charters to terminate the charter, we may be unable to enter into an adequate replacement charter for the applicable vessel or vessels. The loss of any of our significant customers or a reduction in revenues from them could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, cash flows and financial condition.

### ***Our charterers may terminate or default on their charters, which could adversely affect our business, results of operations and cash flow.***

Our charters may terminate earlier than their scheduled expirations. The terms of our existing or future charters may vary as to which events or occurrences will cause a charter to terminate or give the charterer the option to terminate the charter, but these may include: a total or constructive loss of the relevant vessel; the governmental requisition for hire of the relevant vessel; or the failure of the relevant vessel to meet specified performance criteria. In addition, the ability of each of our charterers to perform its obligations under a charter will depend on a number of factors that are beyond our control. These factors may include general economic conditions, the condition of the tanker industry, the charter rates received for specific types of vessels and various operating expenses. The costs and delays associated with the default by a charterer under a charter of a vessel may be considerable and may adversely affect our business, results of operations, cash flows and financial condition and our available cash.

To the extent we enter into time charters for our vessels, we cannot predict whether our charterers will, upon the expiration of their charters, re-charter our vessels on favorable terms or at all. If our charterers are unable or decide not to re-charter our vessels, we may not be able to re-charter them on terms similar to our current charters or at all. In addition, the ability and willingness of each of our counterparties to perform its obligations under a time charter agreement with us will depend on a number of factors that are beyond our control and may include, among other things, general economic conditions, the condition of the tanker shipping industry and the overall financial condition of the counterparties. Charterers are sensitive to the commodity markets and may be impacted by market forces affecting commodities. In depressed market conditions, there have been reports of charterers renegotiating their charters or defaulting on their obligations under charters. Our customers may fail to pay charter hire or attempt to renegotiate charter rates. If a counterparty fails to honor its obligations under agreements with us, it may be difficult for us to secure substitute employment for such vessel, and any new charter arrangements we secure in the spot market or on time charters may be at lower rates. Any failure by our charterers to meet their obligations to us or any renegotiation of our charter agreements could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

### ***Our ability to obtain additional debt financing may be dependent on the performance of our then-existing charters and the creditworthiness of our charterers.***

The actual or perceived credit quality of our charterers, and any defaults by them, may materially affect our ability to obtain the additional capital resources that we will require to purchase additional vessels or may significantly increase our costs of obtaining such capital. Our inability to obtain additional financing at all or at a higher than anticipated cost may materially affect our results of operations and our ability to implement our business strategy.

### ***We are a holding company and depend on the ability of our subsidiaries to distribute funds to us in order to satisfy our financial obligations.***

We are a holding company and our subsidiaries which are all directly and indirectly wholly owned by us, conduct our operations and own all of our operating assets. As a result, our ability to satisfy our financial obligations and to pay principal and interest on our Notes depends on the ability of our subsidiaries to generate profits available for distribution to us and, to the extent that they are unable to generate profits, we will be unable to pay our creditors,



including holders of our Notes.

S-28

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Our ability to grow may be adversely affected by our dividend policy.***

Under our dividend policy, we expect to distribute on a quarterly basis as dividends on our shares of common stock an amount equal to 60% of Earnings from Continuing Operations (which represents our earnings per share reported under U.S. GAAP as adjusted for unrealized and realized gains and losses and extraordinary items). Accordingly, our growth, if any, may not be as fast as businesses that do not distribute quarterly dividends. To the extent we do not have sufficient cash reserves or are unable to obtain financing from external sources, our dividend policy may significantly impair our ability to meet our financial needs or to grow. Since August 31, 2016, when we paid a cash dividend of \$0.11 per share for the quarter ended June 30, 2016, we have not paid cash dividends on our shares of common stock due to losses from continuing operations.

### ***If interest rates increase, it will affect the interest rates under our credit facilities, which could affect our results of operations.***

Amounts borrowed under our existing credit facilities bear interest at an annual rate ranging from 2.50% to 3.50% above LIBOR. Interest rates have recently been at historic lows and any increase in interest rates would lead to an increase in LIBOR, which would affect the amount of interest payable on amounts that we borrow under our credit facilities, which in turn could have an adverse effect on our results of operations.

### ***If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results or prevent fraud. As a result, shareholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the trading price of our Notes.***

Effective internal controls over financial reporting are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in their implementation, could cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. In addition, any testing we conduct in connection with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the Sarbanes-Oxley Act), or any subsequent testing by our independent registered public accounting firm, may reveal deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting that are deemed to be material weaknesses or that may require prospective or retroactive changes to our financial statements or identify other areas for further attention or improvement. Inferior internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our securities.

We are required to disclose changes made in our internal controls and procedures and our management is required to assess the effectiveness of these controls annually. However, for as long as we are an emerging growth company, as defined in the Securities Act, our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We could be an emerging growth company until December 31, 2018 after which period our auditors will provide such attestation. An independent assessment of the effectiveness of our internal controls could detect problems that our management's assessment might not. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements and require us to incur the expense of remediation.

### ***We are subject to certain risks with respect to our counterparties on contracts, and failure of such counterparties to meet their obligations could cause us to suffer losses or otherwise adversely affect our results of operations.***

We have entered into spot charter contracts, commercial pool agreements, ship management agreements, credit facilities and finance lease arrangements and other commercial arrangements. Such agreements and arrangements subject us to counterparty risks. The ability of each of our counterparties to perform its obligations under a contract

with us will depend on a number of factors that are beyond our control and may include, among

S-29

**Table of Contents**

other things, general economic conditions, the condition of the maritime and offshore industries, the overall financial condition of the counterparty, charter rates received for specific types of vessels, and various expenses. For example, the combination of a reduction of cash flow resulting from declines in world trade, a reduction in borrowing bases under reserve-based credit facilities and the lack of availability of debt or equity financing may result in a significant reduction in the ability of our charterers to make charter payments to us. In addition, in depressed market conditions, our charterers and customers may no longer need a vessel that is currently under charter or contract or may be able to obtain a comparable vessel at lower rates. As a result, charterers and customers may seek to renegotiate the terms of their existing charter agreements or avoid their obligations under those contracts. Should a counterparty fail to honor its obligations under agreements with us, we could sustain significant losses, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our business depends upon key members of our senior management team who may not necessarily continue to work for us.***

Our future success depends to a significant extent upon certain members of our senior management team. Our management team includes members who have substantial experience in the product tanker and chemical shipping industries and have worked with us since inception. Our management team is crucial to the execution of our business strategies and to the growth and development of our business. If the individuals were no longer affiliated with us, we may be unable to recruit other employees with equivalent talent and experience, and our business and financial condition may suffer as a result.

***Our insurance may not be adequate to cover our losses that may result from our operations due to the inherent risks of the tanker industry.***

We carry insurance to protect us against most of the accident-related risks involved in the conduct of our business, including marine hull and machinery insurance, protection and indemnity insurance, which includes pollution risks, crew insurance and war risk insurance. However, we may not be adequately insured to cover losses from our operational risks, which could have a material adverse effect on us. Additionally, our insurers may refuse to pay particular claims and our insurance may be voidable by the insurers if we take, or fail to take, certain action, such as failing to maintain certification of our vessels with applicable maritime regulatory organizations. Any significant uninsured or under-insured loss or liability could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, we may not be able to obtain adequate insurance coverage at reasonable rates in the future during adverse insurance market conditions. Changes in the insurance markets attributable to terrorist attacks may also make certain types of insurance more difficult for us to obtain due to increased premiums or reduced or restricted coverage for losses caused by terrorist acts generally.

***Because we obtain some of our insurance through protection and indemnity associations, we may be required to make additional premium payments.***

We receive insurance coverage for tort liability, including pollution-related liability, from protection and indemnity associations. We may be subject to increased premium payments, or calls, in amounts based on our claim records, the claim records of our managers, as well as the claim records of other members of the protection and indemnity associations. In addition, our protection and indemnity associations may not have enough resources to cover claims made against them. Our payment of these calls could result in significant expense to us, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.



---

**Table of Contents**

***Exposure to currency exchange rate fluctuations could result in fluctuations in our operating results.***

We operate within the international shipping market, which utilizes the U.S. Dollar as its functional currency. As a consequence, the majority of our revenues and the majority of our expenses are in U.S. Dollars. However, we incur certain general and operating expenses, including vessel operating expenses and general and administrative expenses, in foreign currencies, the most significant of which are the Euro, Singapore Dollar, and British Pound Sterling. This partial mismatch in revenues and expenses could lead to fluctuations in net income due to changes in the value of the U.S. Dollar relative to other currencies.

***Climate change and greenhouse gas restrictions may adversely affect our operating results.***

A number of countries have adopted, or are considering the adoption of, international, national or local regulatory frameworks to reduce greenhouse gas emissions due to the concern about climate change. These regulatory measures in various jurisdictions include the adoption of cap and trade regimes, carbon taxes, increased efficiency standards, and incentives or mandates for renewable energy. In November 2016, the Paris Agreement that deals with greenhouse gas emission reduction measures and targets to limit global temperature increases came into force, which could result in additional regulation on the shipping industry (although it does not directly limit greenhouse gas emissions from ships at this time). Compliance with changes in laws, regulations and obligations relating to climate change, including as a result of such international negotiations, could increase our costs related to operating and maintaining our vessels and require us to install new emission controls, acquire allowances or pay taxes related to our greenhouse gas emissions, or administer and manage a greenhouse gas emissions program. Revenue generation and strategic growth opportunities may also be adversely affected.

The effects upon the oil industry relating to climate change and the resulting regulations may also include declining demand for our services. We do not expect that demand for oil will lessen dramatically over the short-term, but in the long-term climate change may reduce the demand for oil or increased regulation of greenhouse gases may create greater incentives for use of alternative energy sources. Any long-term material adverse effect on the oil industry could adversely affect the financial and operational aspects of our business, which we cannot predict with certainty at this time.

***We are incorporated in the Republic of the Marshall Islands, which does not have a well-developed body of corporate case law or bankruptcy law and, as a result, holders may have fewer rights and protections under the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands than under a typical jurisdiction in the United States.***

Our corporate affairs are governed by our articles of incorporation and bylaws and by the Business Corporations Act of the Republic of the Marshall Islands (the "BCA"). The provisions of the BCA resemble provisions of the corporation laws of a number of states in the United States. However, there have been few judicial cases in the Republic of the Marshall Islands interpreting the BCA. The rights and fiduciary responsibilities of directors under the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands are not as clearly established as the rights and fiduciary responsibilities of directors under statutes or judicial precedent in existence in certain U.S. jurisdictions. In addition, the Republic of the Marshall Islands does not have a well-developed body of bankruptcy law. As such, in the case of a bankruptcy involving us, there may be a delay of bankruptcy proceedings and the ability of holders of our Notes and other creditors to receive recovery after a bankruptcy proceeding, and any such recovery may be less predictable.

***It may be difficult to serve process on or enforce a U.S. judgment against us, our officers and our directors.***

We are a Marshall Islands corporation and several of our executive offices are located outside of the United States. Most of our directors and officers reside outside the United States. In addition, a substantial portion of our assets and

the assets of our directors, officers and experts are located outside of the United States. As a result, you may have difficulty serving legal process upon us or any of these persons within the United States. You may

S-31

**Table of Contents**

also have difficulty enforcing, both in and outside the United States, judgments you may obtain in U.S. courts against us or any of these persons in any action, including actions based upon the civil liability provisions of U.S. federal or state securities laws. In addition, there is substantial doubt that the courts of the Republic of the Marshall Islands or of non-U.S. jurisdictions in which our offices are located would enter judgments in original actions brought in those courts predicated on U.S. federal or state securities laws.

***Anti-takeover provisions in our charter documents could make it difficult for our shareholders to replace or remove our current board of directors or could have the effect of discouraging, delaying or preventing a merger or acquisition, which could adversely affect the market price of the Notes.***

Several provisions of our articles of incorporation and bylaws could make it difficult for our shareholders to change the composition of our board of directors in any one year, preventing them from changing the composition of management. In addition, the same provisions may discourage, delay or prevent a merger or acquisition that shareholders may consider favorable. These provisions include:

authorizing the board of directors to issue blank check preferred stock without shareholder approval;

providing for a classified board of directors with staggered, three-year terms;

prohibiting cumulative voting in the election of directors;

authorizing the removal of directors only for cause and only upon the affirmative vote of the holders of two-thirds of the outstanding shares of our common stock entitled to vote for the directors;

limiting the persons who may call special meetings of shareholders; and

establishing advance notice requirements for nominating candidates for election to our board of directors or for proposing matters that can be acted on by shareholders at shareholder meetings.

These anti-takeover provisions could substantially impede the ability of public shareholders to benefit from a change in control and, as a result, may adversely affect the market price of our Notes and your ability to realize a benefit related to a change of control.

***We may be subject to additional taxes, which could adversely impact our business and financial results.***

We and our subsidiaries are subject to tax in certain jurisdictions in which we or our subsidiaries are organized, own assets or have operations. In computing our tax obligations in these jurisdictions, we are required to take various tax accounting and reporting positions on matters that are not entirely free from doubt and for which we have not received rulings from the governing authorities. We cannot assure you that, upon review of these positions, the applicable authorities will agree with our positions. A successful challenge by a tax authority could result in additional tax imposed on us or our subsidiaries, which could adversely impact our business and financial results.



***We are an emerging growth company , and we cannot be certain if the reduced reporting requirements applicable to emerging growth companies will make the Notes less attractive to investors.***

We are an emerging growth company , as defined in the Securities Act, and we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies . Investors may find the Notes less attractive because we rely on certain of these exemptions. If some investors find our Notes less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our Notes and the price of the Notes may be more volatile.

Because of our status as an emerging growth company under the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act status, our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act for so long as we are

**Table of Contents**

an emerging growth company. As long as we take advantage of the reduced reporting obligations, the information that we provide investors may be different from information provided by other public companies. We may take advantage of these provisions until December 31, 2018 or such earlier time that we are no longer an emerging growth company. We will cease to be an emerging growth company if, among other things, we have more than \$1.0 billion in total annual gross revenues during the most recently completed fiscal year.

S-33

**Table of Contents**

**USE OF PROCEEDS**

We will receive net proceeds of approximately \$                    million (or approximately \$                    million if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional Notes in full), after deducting underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses, from the issuance of the Notes in this offering. We intend to use the net proceeds from this offering for general corporate purposes, which may include funding future vessel acquisitions.

S-34

Table of Contents**CAPITALIZATION**

The following table sets forth our consolidated cash and cash equivalents and our capitalization as of September 30, 2018, on a historical basis and on an as adjusted basis to give effect to the Notes to be issued in this offering and the application of the estimated net proceed therefrom as described under Use of Proceeds. The data in the table is derived from, and should be read in conjunction with, our historical financial statements, including accompanying notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement.

	<b>As of September 30, 2018</b>	
	<b>Actual</b>	<b>As Adjusted <sup>(1)</sup></b>
Cash and cash equivalents <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 33,271,166	\$
Current debt:		
Current portion of long-term debt	\$ 34,022,095	\$
Current portion of finance lease obligations	8,254,968	
Current portion of operating lease obligations	464,167	
Non-current debt:		
Non-current portion of long-term debt <sup>(2)</sup>	317,313,028	
Non-current portion of finance lease obligations <sup>(2)</sup>	85,405,079	
Non-current portion of operating lease obligations	1,625,696	
<b>Total debt</b>	<b>\$ 447,085,033</b>	<b>\$</b>
Equity:		
Share capital		
Common shares, par value \$0.01 per share, 225,000,000 shares authorized; 33,097,831 shares issued and outstanding;	\$ 350,192	\$
Additional paid-in capital	414,083,265	
Treasury stock	(15,348,909)	
Accumulated deficit	(35,543,002)	
<b>Total equity</b>	<b>\$ 363,541,546</b>	<b>\$</b>
<b>Total capitalization</b>	<b>\$ 810,626,579</b>	<b>\$</b>

(1) Assumes the underwriters have not exercised their option to purchase additional Notes.

(2) Excludes the effects relating to our sale-leaseback transactions that occurred in October 2018 for the *Ardmore Dauntless*, *Ardmore Defender*, *Ardmore Explorer* and *Ardmore Encounter*, including our receipt of \$19.7 million of net proceeds, our repayment of \$67.0 million of indebtedness and the incurrence of an additional \$86.7 million of finance lease obligations.



**Table of Contents****DESCRIPTION OF NOTES**

The following description is only a summary of certain provisions of the Notes and the Indenture (as defined below). You should read these documents in their entirety because they, and not this description, define your rights as holders of the Notes. The following summary does not purport to be complete and is subject to, and is qualified in its entirety by reference to, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the TIA), and to all of the provisions of the Indenture and those terms made a part of the Indenture by reference to the TIA. Unless the context requires otherwise, all references to we, us, our and the Company in this section refer solely to Ardmore Shipping Corporation, the issuer of the Notes, and not to any of its subsidiaries. The following description of the particular terms of the Notes offered hereby supplements the Description of Debt Securities set forth in the accompanying prospectus.

**General**

The Notes will be issued under an indenture to be dated as of November 1, 2018 (the Base Indenture), between us and The Bank of New York Mellon, as trustee (the Trustee), as supplemented by a first supplemental indenture to be dated as of November 1, 2018, between us and the Trustee (the Supplemental Indenture and, together with the Base Indenture, the Indenture). The Notes will be a separate series of our debt securities (as that term is used in the accompanying prospectus).

The Notes will initially be limited to \$ \_\_\_\_\_ in aggregate principal amount (or \$ \_\_\_\_\_ if the underwriters exercise their option to purchase additional Notes in full). The Indenture will not limit the amount of debt securities that we may issue under the Indenture and will provide that debt securities may be issued from time to time in one or more series. We may from time to time, without giving notice to or seeking the consent of the holders of the Notes, issue debt securities having the same interest rate, maturity and other terms (except for the issue date, the public offering price and the first interest payment date) as, and ranking equally and ratably with, the Notes. Any additional debt securities having such similar terms (Additional Notes), together with the Notes, will constitute a single series of debt securities under the Indenture, including for purposes of voting and redemptions, and any Additional Notes issued as part of the same series as the Notes will be fungible with the Notes for U.S. federal income tax purposes or will have a separate CUSIP number than the Notes. No additional debt securities may be issued if an event of default has occurred and is continuing with respect to the Notes. For the avoidance of doubt, so long as no default or event of default hereunder would result therefrom, nothing contained herein shall prohibit the Company from entering into commercial loans or bank debt, including without limitation, such debt that may be syndicated.

Other than as described under Certain Covenants, the Indenture and the terms of the Notes will not contain any covenants restricting the operation of our business or our ability to incur debt or grant liens on our assets or that are designed to afford holders of the Notes protection in a highly leveraged or other transaction involving us that may adversely affect holders of the Notes.

The Notes will mature on November 30, 2023 and will bear interest at an annual rate of \_\_\_\_\_ % per year.

Interest on the Notes will accrue from and including November 1, 2018. We will make interest payments on the Notes quarterly on February 28, May 30, August 30 and November 30 of each year, beginning on February 28, 2019, to holders of record at the close of business on the February 15, May 15, August 15 or November 15 (whether or not that date is a business day), as the case may be, immediately preceding such interest payment date. Interest on the Notes will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months.

If any interest payment date or the maturity date of the Notes falls on a day that is not a business day, the related payment of interest or principal, as the case may be, will be made on the next business day as if it were



## **Table of Contents**

made on the date such payment was due, and no interest will accrue on the amounts so payable for the period from and after such interest payment date or the maturity date of the Notes, as the case may be, to such next business day.

The Notes will not be entitled to the benefit of any sinking fund.

The Notes will be issued only in fully registered form without coupons and in minimum denominations of \$25 and integral multiples of \$25 in excess thereof. The Notes will be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ( DTC ). Except as described under Book-entry System; Delivery and Form, the Notes will not be issuable in certificated form.

## **Ranking**

The Notes will be our unsubordinated unsecured obligations and will rank equally in right of payment with all our existing and future unsubordinated unsecured indebtedness. The Notes will rank senior in right of payment to all of our existing and future subordinated indebtedness. The Notes will effectively rank junior to our current and any future secured indebtedness incurred by us, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness. Please read Risk Factors Our Notes will be unsecured obligations and will be effectively subordinated to our secured debt.

The Notes will be obligations solely of the Company and will not be guaranteed by any of our subsidiaries. We derive substantially all of our operating income and cash flow from our investments in our subsidiaries. Claims of creditors of our subsidiaries generally will have priority with respect to the assets and earnings of such subsidiaries over the claims of our creditors, including holders of the Notes. As a result, the Notes will be effectively subordinated to creditors, including trade creditors and preferred shareholders, if any, other than us, of our subsidiaries. Please read Risk Factors Our subsidiaries conduct the substantial majority of our operations and own our operating assets, and your right to receive payments on our Notes is effectively subordinated to the rights of the lenders and other creditors of our subsidiaries.

As of September 30, 2018, the Company had an aggregate of \$445.0 million of debt outstanding, which included \$93.7 million in finance lease obligations, all of which is secured debt of our subsidiaries.

## **Listing**

We have applied to list the Notes on the NYSE under the symbol ARDB. We expect trading in the Notes to begin within 30 days after the original issue date of the Notes.

## **Optional Redemption**

Except as described under Optional Redemption for Changes in Withholding Taxes, the Notes will not be redeemable by us at our option prior to November 30, 2020.



## **Table of Contents**

The Notes will be redeemable at our option, in whole or in part, at any time on or after November 30, 2020 upon providing not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior notice, at a redemption price equal to 100% of the principal amount to be redeemed, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the date fixed for redemption, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date.

Additionally, we or our affiliates may purchase Notes from investors who are willing to sell from time to time, either in the open market at prevailing prices or in private transactions at negotiated prices. Notes that we or they purchase may, at our or their discretion, be held, resold or canceled.

If money sufficient to pay the redemption price of all of the Notes, or portions thereof, to be redeemed on the applicable redemption date is irrevocably deposited with the Trustee or paying agent on or before the applicable redemption date, then on and after such redemption date, interest will cease to accrue on such Notes, or such portion thereof, called for redemption and such Notes will be deemed to be no longer outstanding.

## **Selection for Redemption**

If fewer than all of the Notes are to be redeemed at any time, the registrar will select the Notes, or portions thereof, to be redeemed, in compliance with the requirements of DTC, or if DTC prescribes no method of selection, on a pro rata basis, by lot or by any other method the registrar deems fair and reasonable; *provided, however*, that Notes, and portions thereof, selected for redemption shall only be in amounts of \$25 or whole multiples of \$25.

## **Notice of Redemption**

Notices of redemption shall be provided at least 30 but not more than 60 days before the applicable redemption date to each holder of Notes to be redeemed, which notice shall be provided by first-class mail to each holder of Notes to be redeemed at such holder's address appearing in the register of Notes maintained by the registrar (or otherwise delivered in accordance with applicable DTC procedures). We will, at least two business days prior to the publication or sending of any notice of redemption of any Notes as described under this heading, furnish to the Trustee and the registrar written notice of redemption.

A notice of redemption will identify the Notes to be redeemed and will state: the provision of the Indenture pursuant to which the Notes are being redeemed; the redemption date; the redemption price, including the portion thereof constituting accrued and unpaid interest; the amount of Additional Amounts (as defined below), if any, payable on the date fixed for redemption; the name and address of the paying agent; that Notes called for redemption must be surrendered to the paying agent to collect the redemption price; that, unless we default in making the redemption payment on the Notes called for redemption, interest on such Notes will cease to accrue on and after the redemption date; if any Note is being redeemed in part, the portion of the principal amount of such Note to be redeemed; if less than all of the Notes are to be redeemed, the aggregate principal amount of Notes to be outstanding after such redemption; and that the Notes called for redemption will become due on the date fixed for redemption.

## **Additional Amounts**

All payments made by or on behalf of the Company under or with respect to the Notes will be made free and clear of and without withholding or deduction for, or on account of, any present or future tax, duty, levy, impost, assessment or other governmental charge (including penalties, interest and other liabilities related thereto) (hereinafter "Taxes") unless the withholding or deduction of such Taxes is then required by law. If any deduction or withholding for, or on account of, any Taxes imposed or levied by or on behalf of the government of the Republic of Marshall Islands or any political subdivision or any authority or agency therein or thereof having power to tax, or any other jurisdiction in

which the Company (including any successor entity) is organized or is

S-38

**Table of Contents**

otherwise resident for tax purposes, or any jurisdiction from or through which payment is made (including, without limitation, the jurisdiction of each paying agent) (each a Specified Tax Jurisdiction ), will at any time be required to be made from any payments made under or with respect to the Notes, the Company will pay such additional amounts (the Additional Amounts ) as may be necessary so that the net amount received in respect of such payments by a holder (including Additional Amounts) after such withholding or deduction will not be less than the amount such holder would have received if such Taxes had not been withheld or deducted; *provided, however*, that the foregoing obligation to pay Additional Amounts does not apply to:

- (1) any Taxes that would not have been so imposed but for the holder or beneficial owner of the Notes having any present or former connection with the Specified Tax Jurisdiction (other than the mere acquisition, ownership, holding, enforcement or receipt of payment in respect of the Notes);
- (2) any estate, inheritance, gift, sales, excise, transfer, personal property tax or similar tax, assessment or governmental charge;
- (3) any Taxes payable other than by deduction or withholding from payments under, or with respect to, the Notes;
- (4) any Taxes imposed as a result of the failure of the holder or beneficial owner of the Notes to complete, execute and deliver to the Company any form or document to the extent applicable to such holder or beneficial owner that may be required by law or by reason of administration of such law and which is reasonably requested in writing to be delivered to the Company in order to enable the Company to make payments on the Notes without deduction or withholding for Taxes, or with deduction or withholding of a lesser amount, which form or document will be delivered within 60 days of a written request therefor by the Company;
- (5) any Taxes that would not have been so imposed but for the beneficiary of the payment having presented a note for payment (in cases in which presentation is required) more than 30 days after the date on which such payment or such note became due and payable or the date on which payment thereof is duly provided for, whichever is later (except to the extent that the holder would have been entitled to Additional Amounts had the note been presented on the last day of such 30-day period);
- (6) any Taxes imposed on or with respect to any payment by the Company to the holder if such holder is a fiduciary or partnership or person other than the sole beneficial owner of such payment, to the extent that a beneficiary or settlor with respect to such fiduciary, a member of such partnership or the beneficial owner of such payment would not have been entitled to Additional Amounts had such beneficiary, settlor, member or beneficial owner been the actual holder of such note;
- (7) any Taxes imposed or withheld by reason of the failure of the holder or beneficial owner of a Note to comply with the requirements of Sections 1471 through 1474 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of

- 1986, as amended (the Code ), the U.S. Treasury Regulations issued thereunder or any official interpretation thereof or any agreement entered into pursuant to Section 1471 of the Code; or
- (8) any combination of items (1) through (7) above.

If the Company becomes aware that it will be obligated to pay Additional Amounts with respect to any payment under or with respect to the Notes, the Company will deliver to the Trustee and paying agent at least 30 days prior to the date of that payment (unless the obligation to pay Additional Amounts arises after the 30th day prior to that payment date, in which case the Company will notify the Trustee and paying agent promptly thereafter but in no event later than two business days prior to the date of payment) an officers' certificate stating the fact that Additional Amounts will be payable and the amount so payable. The officers' certificate must also set forth any other information necessary to enable the paying agent to pay Additional Amounts to holders on the relevant payment date. The Trustee and paying agent will be entitled to rely solely on such officers' certificate as conclusive proof that such payments are necessary. The Company will provide the Trustee and paying agent with

## **Table of Contents**

documentation reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee and paying agent evidencing the payment of Additional Amounts.

The Company will make all withholdings and deductions required by law and will remit the full amount deducted or withheld to the relevant governmental authority on a timely basis in accordance with applicable law. As soon as practicable, the Company will provide the Trustee and paying agent with an official receipt or, if official receipts are not obtainable, other documentation reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee and paying agent evidencing the payment of the Taxes so withheld or deducted. Upon written request, copies of those receipts or other documentation, as the case may be, will be made available by the Trustee and paying agent to the holders of the Notes.

Whenever in the Indenture there is referenced, in any context, the payment of amounts based upon the principal amount of the Notes or of principal, interest or any other amount payable under, or with respect to, the Notes, such reference will be deemed to include payment of Additional Amounts as described under this heading to the extent that, in such context, Additional Amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof.

The Company will indemnify a holder, within 10 business days after written demand therefor, for the full amount of any Taxes paid by such holder to a governmental authority of a Specified Tax Jurisdiction, on or with respect to any payment by or on account of any obligation of the Company to withhold or deduct an amount on account of Taxes for which the Company would have been obligated to pay Additional Amounts hereunder and any penalties, interest and reasonable expenses arising therefrom or with respect thereto, whether or not such Taxes were correctly or legally imposed or asserted by the relevant governmental authority. A certificate as to the amount of such payment or liability delivered to the Company by a holder will be conclusive absent manifest error.

The Company will pay any present or future stamp, court or documentary taxes or any other excise or property taxes, charges or similar levies that arise in any Specified Tax Jurisdiction from the execution, delivery, enforcement or registration of the Notes, the Indenture or any other document or instrument in relation thereof, or the receipt of any payments with respect to the Notes, and the Company will indemnify the holders for any such taxes paid by such holders.

The obligations described under this heading will survive any termination, defeasance or discharge of the Indenture and will apply *mutatis mutandis* to any jurisdiction in which any successor person to the Company is organized or any political subdivision or authority or agency thereof or therein.

## **Optional Redemption for Changes in Withholding Taxes**

The Company may redeem the Notes, at its option, at any time in whole but not in part, upon not less than 15 nor more than 60 days' notice (which notice will be irrevocable), at a redemption price equal to 100% of the outstanding principal amount of Notes, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the date fixed for redemption and all Additional Amounts (if any) then due and which will become due on the applicable redemption date (subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date and Additional Amounts (if any) in respect thereof), in the event that the Company determines in good faith that the Company has become or would become obligated to pay, on the next date on which any amount would be payable with respect to the Notes, Additional Amounts and such obligation cannot be avoided by taking reasonable measures available to the Company (including making payment through a paying agent located in another jurisdiction), as a result of:

- (1) a change in or an amendment to the laws (including any regulations or rulings promulgated thereunder) of any Specified Tax Jurisdiction affecting taxation, which change or amendment is announced or becomes effective on or after the date of the Indenture; or

S-40

---

**Table of Contents**

- (2) any change in or amendment to any official position of a taxing authority in any Specified Tax Jurisdiction regarding the application, administration or interpretation of such laws, regulations or rulings (including a holding, judgment or order by a court of competent jurisdiction), which change or amendment is announced or becomes effective on or after the date of the Indenture.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, no notice of redemption for changes in withholding taxes may be given earlier than 60 days prior to the earliest date on which the Company would be obligated to pay Additional Amounts if a payment in respect of the Notes were then due. At least two business days before the Company provides notice of redemption of the Notes as described above under Notice of Redemption, the Company will deliver to the Trustee and paying agent (a) an officers certificate stating that the Company is entitled to effect such redemption and setting forth a statement of facts showing that the conditions precedent to the right of the Company to so redeem have occurred and (b) an opinion of independent legal counsel of recognized standing reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee and paying agent that the Company has or will become obligated to pay Additional Amounts as a result of the circumstances referred to in clause (1) or (2) of the preceding paragraph.

The Trustee and paying agent will accept and will be entitled to conclusively rely upon the officers certificate and opinion as sufficient evidence of the satisfaction of the conditions precedent described above, in which case they will be conclusive and binding on the holders.

**Certain Covenants**

The Indenture includes the following restrictive covenants. Certain defined terms relevant to the covenants are set forth under Certain Definitions and Interpretations below.

- (a) *Limitation on Borrowings.* The Company shall not permit Net Borrowings to equal or exceed 70% of Total Assets.
- (b) *Limitation on Minimum Net Worth.* The Company shall ensure that Net Worth always exceeds one hundred and fifty million dollars (US\$150,000,000).
- (c) *Reports.* Following any Cross Default (as defined below), the Company shall promptly notify the Trustee of the occurrence of such Cross Default.
- (d) *Restricted Payments.* If (i) an event of default or an event or circumstance which, with the giving of any notice or the lapse of time, would constitute an event of default has occurred and is continuing, (ii) an event of default or an event or circumstance which, with the giving of any notice or the lapse of time, would constitute an event of default would result therefrom, (iii) the Company is not in compliance with the covenant described under Limitation on Borrowings or Limitation on Minimum Net Worth in Certain Covenants above, or (iv) any payment of dividends or any form of distribution or return of capital would result in the Company not being in compliance with the covenant described under Limitation on Borrowings or Limitation on Minimum Net Worth in Certain Covenants above, then none of the Company or any subsidiary will declare or pay any dividends or return any capital to its equity holders (other than the Company or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company) or authorize or make any other distribution, payment or delivery of property or cash to its equity holders (other than the Company or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company), or redeem, retire, purchase or otherwise acquire, directly or indirectly, for value, any interest of any class or series of its equity interests (or acquire any rights, options or warrants relating thereto, but not including convertible debt) now or hereafter outstanding and held by persons other than the Company or any wholly-owned subsidiary, or repay any subordinated loans to equity holders (other than the Company or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company) or set aside any funds for any of the foregoing purposes ( Restricted Payments ); provided, however, that, notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may make Restricted Payments payable solely in equity interests

issued by the Company and not in cash.

S-41



---

**Table of Contents**

(e) *Line of Business.* The Company and its Subsidiaries (excluding any Immaterial Subsidiaries), taken as a whole, will not engage primarily in any business other than a Permitted Business.

(f) *Limitation on Asset Sales.* The Company shall not, and shall not permit any subsidiary to, in the ordinary course of business or otherwise, sell, lease, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of any of the Company's, or of any such subsidiary's, assets (including capital stock and warrants, options or other rights to acquire capital stock) (an "Asset Sale"), other than pursuant to a Permitted Asset Sale or a Limited Permitted Asset Sale, unless (A) the Company receives, or a subsidiary receives, consideration at the time of such Asset Sale at least equal to the fair market value (including as to the value of all non-cash consideration), as determined in good faith by the board of directors of the Company, of the assets subject to such Asset Sale, and (B) within 365 days after the receipt of any Net Proceeds from an Asset Sale, the Company or such subsidiary, as the case may be, shall apply all such Net Proceeds to:

- (1) repay or prepay indebtedness under any Credit Facility or other Vessel financing secured by a lien on assets of the Company or any subsidiary;
- (2) acquire all or substantially all of the assets of, or any Capital Stock of, a person primarily engaged in a Permitted Business; *provided*, that in the case of the acquisition of Capital Stock of any Person, such Person is or becomes a subsidiary of the Company and will be subject to all restrictions described in this Description of Notes as applying to subsidiaries of the Company existing on the date of the issuance of the Notes;
- (3) make a capital expenditure (including, without limitation, making any payments with respect to dry docking of Vessels or under newbuilding contracts, bareboat charters, charter-in contracts or Vessel acquisition arrangements);
- (4) acquire other assets that are not classified as current assets under GAAP and that are used or useful in a Permitted Business (including, without limitation, Vessels and Related Assets);
- (5) repay unsecured senior indebtedness of the Company or any subsidiary (including any redemption, repurchase, retirement or other acquisition of the Notes); or
- (6) any combination of the transactions permitted by the foregoing clauses (1) through (5),

*provided*, that any sale, assignment, conveyance, transfer or lease of all or substantially all of the Company's properties and assets to any person or persons (whether in a single transaction or a series of related transactions) will be governed by the provisions described under the captions "Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes and Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets" and not by the provisions of this "Limitation on Asset Sales."

A (1) binding contract to apply the Net Proceeds in accordance with clauses (2) through (4) above shall toll the 365-day period in respect of such Net Proceeds or (2) determination by the Company to apply all or a portion of such Net Proceeds toward the exercise of an outstanding purchase option contract shall toll the 365-day period in respect of such Net Proceeds or portion thereof, in each case, for a period not to exceed 365 days or, in the case of a binding contract to acquire one or more Vessels, until the end of the construction or delivery period specified in such binding contract, as the same may be extended, from the expiration of the initial 365-day period, *provided* that such binding contract and such determination by the Company, in each case, shall be treated as a permitted application of Net Proceeds from the date of such binding contract or determination until and only until the earlier of (x) the date on which such acquisition or expenditure is consummated and (y) (i) in the case of a construction contract or any exercised purchase option contract, the date of expiration or termination of such construction contract or exercised purchase option contract and (ii) in all other cases, the 365th day following the expiration of the initial 365-day period.

S-42

## **Table of Contents**

Pending the final application of any Net Proceeds, the Company or any of its subsidiaries may apply Net Proceeds to the repayment or reduction of outstanding indebtedness or otherwise invest the Net Proceeds in any manner that is not prohibited by the Indenture.

If a Limited Permitted Asset Sale (as defined below) occurs at any time, the Company must, within 30 days after receipt of Net Proceeds of such Limited Permitted Asset Sale, make an offer to purchase Notes having a principal amount equal to the Excess Proceeds of such Limited Permitted Asset Sale. The price that the Company will be required to pay (the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price ) is equal to 101% of the principal amount of the Notes to be purchased, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date (as defined below), subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date. If the offer to purchase is for less than all of the outstanding Notes and Notes in an aggregate principal amount in excess of the purchase amount are tendered and not withdrawn pursuant to the offer, the Company will purchase Notes having an aggregate principal amount equal to the purchase amount on a *pro rata* basis, with adjustments so that only notes in multiples of \$25 principal amount will be purchased. The Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date will be a date specified by us that is not less than 20 or more than 35 calendar days following the date of our Limited Permitted Asset Sale notice as described below. Any Notes purchased by us will be paid for in cash. Please read Offer to Purchase.

The determination as to whether fair market value has been received in an Asset Sale and whether an Asset Sale constitutes a Permitted Asset Sale or Limited Permitted Asset Sale shall be made as of the time the agreement for such sale, transfer, lease or other disposition is entered into.

(g) *Compliance Certificate*. The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, an officers' certificate signed by two of the Company's officers, one of which shall be the principal executive, principal financial or principal accounting officer of the Company, stating that a review of the activities of the Company and its subsidiaries during the preceding fiscal year has been made under the supervision of the signing Officers with a view to determining whether the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled its obligations under the Indenture, and further stating, as to such Officer signing such certificate, that to the best of his or her knowledge the Company is not in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of the Indenture (or, if a default or event of default shall have occurred, describing all such defaults or events of default of which he or she may have knowledge and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto). The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 30 days after the occurrence thereof, written notice in the form of an officers' certificate of any event of default described under Events of Default and any event of which it becomes aware that with the giving of notice or the lapse of time would become such an event of default, its status and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

## **Certain Definitions and Interpretations**

For purposes of the foregoing provisions, the following definitions shall apply:

*Cash and Cash Equivalents* means the Company's cash and cash equivalents as determined in accordance with GAAP.

*Credit Facility* means, with respect to the Company or any of its subsidiaries, any debt or commercial paper facilities or debt securities with banks or other lenders providing for revolving credit, term loans, letters of credit, or other borrowings or any agreement treated as a capital or finance lease if and to the extent any of the preceding items would appear as a liability upon a balance sheet of the specified person prepared in accordance with GAAP.

*Cross Default* means the occurrence, with respect to any debt of the Company or any subsidiary (other than debt owed to the Company or any subsidiary) having an aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million or

S-43

**Table of Contents**

more in the aggregate for all such debt of all such persons, of (i) an event of default that results in such debt being due and payable prior to its scheduled maturity or (ii) a failure to make a principal payment when due at final maturity and such defaulted payment is not made, waived or extended within any applicable grace period.

*GAAP* means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America.

*Immaterial Subsidiary* means any subsidiary whose net book value of its assets or revenues is not in excess of 10% of the net book value of the consolidated Total Assets or consolidated vessel revenue, as applicable, of the Company as set out in the annual audited consolidated financial statements of the Company for the immediately preceding fiscal year, provided that, at no time shall (a) the total assets of all Immaterial Subsidiaries exceed 10% of the consolidated Total Assets of the Company or (b) the total vessel revenues calculated with respect to all Immaterial Subsidiaries (calculated on a stand-alone basis), in the aggregate, exceed 10% of the consolidated vessel revenue of the Company, in each case as set out in the annual audited consolidated financial statements of the Company for the immediately preceding fiscal year.

*Limited Permitted Asset Sale* means any sale, transfer, lease or other disposition of any of the Company's or its subsidiaries' assets (in the ordinary course of business or otherwise) during a single fiscal year, in a single transaction or series of transactions, (i) the Net Proceeds of which have not been applied pursuant to clauses (1) through (6) in accordance with the requirements set forth in *Limitation on Asset Sales* and (ii) that results in Net Proceeds in excess of the amount provided for in clause (1) of the definition of Permitted Asset Sale, provided that the Net Proceeds of such Limited Permitted Asset Sale represent consideration at least equal to the fair market value (including as to the value of all non-cash consideration), as determined in good faith by the board of directors of the Company, of the assets subject to such sale, transfer, lease or other disposition. Any Net Proceeds that are not applied or invested as provided in (i) above and are in excess of the amount provided for in clause (1) of the definition of Permitted Asset Sale will constitute Excess Proceeds. For the avoidance of doubt, a Limited Permitted Asset Sale may occur only once. Following the first occurrence of a Limited Permitted Asset Sale, no further Limited Permitted Asset Sale shall be permitted;

*Net Borrowings* means the aggregate of the following, without duplication, as of the most recently completed fiscal quarter of the Company for which the Company's published financial statements of the Company are available:

- (a) Total Borrowings; less
- (b) Cash and Cash Equivalents.

*Net Proceeds* means the aggregate cash proceeds received by the Company or any of its subsidiaries in respect of any Asset Sale (including, without limitation, any cash received upon the sale or other disposition of any non-cash consideration received in any Asset Sale, but excluding any other consideration received in the form of the cancellation or assumption by the purchaser of indebtedness or other obligations in relation to such Asset Sale or received in any other non-cash form and not disposed of for cash), net of fees, commissions, expenses and other direct costs relating to such Asset Sale, including, without limitation, (a) fees and expenses related to such Asset Sale (including legal, accounting and investment banking fees, title and recording tax fees and sales and brokerage commissions, and any relocation expenses and severance or shutdown costs incurred as a result of such Asset Sale), (b) all federal, state, provincial, foreign and local taxes paid or payable as a result of the Asset Sale, (c) any escrow or reserve for adjustment in respect of the sale price of such assets established in accordance with GAAP and any reserve in accordance with GAAP against any liabilities associated with such Asset Sale and retained by the seller after such Asset Sale, including liabilities related to environmental matters and liabilities under any indemnification obligations associated with such Asset Sale, except to the extent that such proceeds are released from any such escrow or to the

extent such reserve is reduced or eliminated, and (d) any indebtedness required by its terms to be repaid, repurchased, redeemed or otherwise retired upon the applicable Asset Sale.

S-44

---

**Table of Contents**

*Net Worth* means the result of, without duplication, as of the most recently completed fiscal quarter of the Company for which published financial statements of the Company are available:

- (a) Total Assets, less
- (b) Total Borrowings (without giving effect to any fair value adjustments pursuant to FASB's Accounting Standards Codification 820).

*Permitted Asset Sale* means:

- (1) any sale, transfer, lease or other disposition of any of the Company's or its subsidiaries' assets (in the ordinary course of business or otherwise) in any transaction or series of transactions, such that (A) the aggregate market value of all assets so sold, transferred, leased or otherwise disposed of under this clause (1) during any fiscal year may be up to (and including) 25% of the aggregate market value of all of the Company's and the Company's subsidiaries' assets (on a consolidated basis) on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year and (B) the Company receives, or the relevant subsidiary receives, consideration at least equal to the fair market value (including as to the value of all non-cash consideration), as determined in good faith by the board of directors of the Company, of the assets subject to such sale, transfer, lease or other disposition;
- (2) any sale, transfer or disposition by the Company or any subsidiary that is followed by the leasing back by the Company or any subsidiary of the asset sold, transferred or disposed of and which lease obligation is required to be classified and accounted for as a capital or finance lease obligation under GAAP;
- (3) (a) the actual or constructive total loss of a Vessel or the agreed or compromised total loss of a Vessel, (b) the destruction of a Vessel, (c) damage to a Vessel to an extent as shall make repair thereof uneconomical or shall render such Vessel permanently unfit for normal use (other than obsolescence) or (d) the condemnation, confiscation, requisition for title, seizure, forfeiture or other taking of title to or use of a Vessel that shall not be revoked within 30 days, in each case as determined in good faith by the board of directors of the Company, *provided* that the aggregate market value of all assets included as a Permitted Asset Sale pursuant to this paragraph during any fiscal year may not exceed 10% of the aggregate market value of all of the Company's and the Company's subsidiaries' assets (on a consolidated basis) on the last day of the immediately preceding fiscal year; and
- (4) (a) a transfer of assets or issuances of equity or other securities among the Company and any of its wholly-owned subsidiaries; (b) any transaction consummated in compliance with Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes and Consolidation, Merger and Sales of Assets; (c) the sale or abandonment of property or equipment (other than Vessels) that has become worn out, obsolete, damaged, unusable, otherwise unsuitable or no longer economically practicable for use in connection with the business of the Company or the relevant subsidiary, as the case may be; (d) any Restricted Payment made in compliance with Certain Covenants Restricted Payments; (e) investments made by the Company or any subsidiary; (f) any casualty loss, taking under power of eminent domain or by condemnation or similar proceeding of any property or assets of the Company or any subsidiary (other than Vessels); (g) the leasing, occupancy agreements or subleasing of property or licensing or sublicensing of intellectual property in the ordinary course of business or in accordance with industry practice; (h) the grant of liens on assets or property of the Company or any subsidiary; (i) or any realization on liens on or any transfer in lieu of foreclosure of assets or property of the Company or any subsidiary, in each case, that does not otherwise constitute an event of default (provided that, in the case of any realization of a lien on a Vessel or the transfer in lieu of foreclosure of a Vessel, any Net Proceeds from such realization or transfer shall be applied as provided in the first paragraph of Certain Covenants Limitation on Asset Sales); (j) chartering of Vessels and licenses of intellectual property; (k) the transfer of property or assets in the form of a surrender or waiver of contract rights or the settlement,

release or surrender of contract, tort or other claims of any kind; (l) the entering into or unwinding of obligations under any hedging agreement; (m) the sale or disposition of any assets or property received as a result of a foreclosure or other similar proceeding or in connection with a transfer in lieu of a foreclosure by the Company or any of its subsidiaries; (n) a disposition of leasehold improvements or leased assets in connection with the termination

S-45



---

**Table of Contents**

of any lease; (o) the sale of interests in a joint venture pursuant to customary put-call or buy-sell arrangements; (p) any disposition of inventory or other assets in the ordinary course of business, (q) dispositions of receivables in connection with the compromise, settlement or collection thereof in the ordinary course of business; and (r) the disposition of cash, cash equivalents and marketable securities.

*Permitted Business* means any business conducted by the Company or any of its subsidiaries as described in the Company's annual report on Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2017 and any businesses that, in the good faith judgment of management of the Company, are reasonably related, ancillary, supplemental or complementary thereto, or reasonable extensions thereof, including, without limitation, the direct or indirect ownership, management, operation and chartering of Vessels and any business incidental thereto.

*Related Assets* means (a) any insurance policies and contracts from time to time in force with respect to a Vessel, (b) the capital stock of any subsidiary of the Company owning one or more Vessels and related assets, (c) any requisition compensation payable in respect of any compulsory acquisition of a Vessel, (d) any earnings derived from the use or operation of a Vessel and/or any earnings account with respect to such earnings, (e) any charters, operating leases, contracts of affreightment, Vessel purchase options and related agreements entered and any security or guarantee in respect of the charterer's or lessee's obligations under such charter, lease, Vessel purchase option or agreement, (f) any cash collateral account established with respect to a Vessel pursuant to the financing arrangement with respect thereto, (g) any building, drydocking, conversion or repair contracts relating to a Vessel and any security or guarantee in respect of the builder's obligations under such contract and (h) any security interest in, or agreement or assignment relating to, any of the foregoing or any mortgage in respect of a Vessel and any asset reasonably related, ancillary or complementary thereto.

*Total Assets* means, in respect of the Company, as of a given date, all of the assets of the Company and its subsidiaries, on a consolidated basis, of the types presented on its consolidated balance sheet, as of the most recently completed fiscal quarter of the Company for which its published financial statements are available.

*Total Borrowings* means the aggregate of the following, without duplication, of the Company and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis:

- (a) the outstanding principal amount of any moneys borrowed; plus
- (b) the outstanding principal amount of any acceptance under any acceptance credit; plus
- (c) the outstanding principal amount of any bond, note, debenture or other similar instrument; plus
- (d) the book values of indebtedness under a lease, charter, hire purchase agreement or other similar arrangement which obligation is required to be classified and accounted for as a capital or finance lease obligation under GAAP, and, for purposes of the Indenture, the amount of such obligation at any date will be the capitalized amount thereof at such date, determined in accordance with GAAP; plus
- (e) the outstanding principal amount of all moneys owing in connection with the sale or discounting of receivables (otherwise than on a non-recourse basis or which otherwise meet any requirements for de-recognition under GAAP); plus
- (f) the outstanding principal amount of any indebtedness arising from any deferred payment agreements arranged primarily as a method of raising finance or financing the acquisition of an asset (except trade payables); plus

- (g) any fixed or minimum premium payable on the repayment or redemption of any instrument referred to in clause (c) above; plus
- (h) the outstanding principal amount of any indebtedness of any person of a type referred to in the above clauses of this definition which is the subject of a guarantee given by the Company to the extent that such guaranteed indebtedness is determined and given a value in respect of the Company and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis in accordance with GAAP;

S-46

**Table of Contents**

in each case, (x) only to the extent any of the foregoing is reflected as a liability on the face of the consolidated balance sheet of the Company and its subsidiaries and (y) calculated as of the end of the most recently completed fiscal quarter of the Company for which its published financial statements are available. Notwithstanding the foregoing, *Total Borrowings* shall not include (i) any indebtedness or obligations arising from derivative transactions entered into not for speculative purposes and for purposes of managing or protecting against interest rate, commodity or currency fluctuations or (ii) any preferred stock.

*Vessels* means one or more shipping vessels primarily designed and utilized for the transport of cargo, including, without limitation, bulk carriers, freighters, general cargo carriers, containerships and tankers, but excluding passenger vessels, or which are otherwise engaged, used or useful in any business activities of the Company, in each case together with all related spares, equipment and any additions or improvements.

For purposes of the foregoing provisions and definitions, any accounting term, phrase, calculation, determination or treatment used, required or referred to in the *Certain Covenants* section is to be construed in accordance with GAAP in effect as of September 30, 2018. To the extent any line item referred in the *Certain Covenants* section is not presented by the Company in its financial statements, the Company shall use the line item that is, in its good-faith judgment, is the most comparable line item that is presented by the Company.

**Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes**

If a Change of Control (as defined below) occurs at any time, holders of Notes will have the right, at their option, to require us to purchase for cash any or all of such holder's Notes, or any portion of the principal amount thereof, that is equal to \$25 or a multiple of \$25. The price we are required to pay (the *Change of Control Purchase Price*) is equal to 101% of the principal amount of the Notes to be purchased, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but excluding, the *Change of Control Purchase Date*, subject to the right of holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date. The *Change of Control Purchase Date* will be a date specified by us that is not less than 20 or more than 35 calendar days following the date of our *Change of Control* notice as described below. Any Notes purchased by us will be paid for in cash. Please read *Offer to Purchase*.

A *Change of Control* will be deemed to have occurred at the time after the Notes are originally issued if

- (1) any *Person* (as such term is used in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act), is or becomes the *Beneficial Owner* (as defined in Rules 13d-3 and 13d-5 under the Exchange Act, except that for purposes of this clause (1) such *Person* shall be deemed to have *Beneficial Ownership* of all shares that any such *Person* has the right to acquire, whether such right is exercisable immediately or only after the passage of up to 60 days from the date of determination), directly or indirectly, of more than 50% of the total voting power of the voting stock of the Company;
- (2) the merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another *Person* or the merger of another *Person* with or into the Company, or the sale of all or substantially all the assets of the Company (determined on a consolidated basis) to another *Person* other than a transaction following which, in the case of a merger or consolidation transaction, holders of securities that represented 100% of the voting stock of the Company immediately prior to such transaction (or other securities into which such

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

securities are converted as part of such merger or consolidation transaction) own directly or indirectly a majority of the voting power of the voting stock of the surviving Person in such merger or consolidation transaction immediately after such transaction and in substantially the same proportion as before the transaction;

- (3) Continuing Directors (as defined below) cease to constitute at least a majority of our board of directors; or

S-47

**Table of Contents**

- (4) if after the Notes are initially listed on the New York Stock Exchange or another national securities exchange, the Notes fail, or at any point cease, to be listed on the New York Stock Exchange or such other national securities exchange. For the avoidance of doubt, it shall not be a Change of Control if after the Notes are initially listed on the New York Stock Exchange or another national securities exchange, such Notes are subsequently listed on a different national securities exchange and the prior listing is terminated.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the purposes of clauses (1) and (2) above, (A) any holding company whose only significant asset is equity interests of the Company or any direct or indirect parent of the Company shall not itself be considered a Person for purposes of this definition; (B) the transfer of assets between or among wholly-owned subsidiaries or the Company shall not itself constitute a Change of Control; (C) a Person shall not be deemed to have beneficial ownership of securities subject to a stock purchase agreement, merger agreement or similar agreement (or voting or option agreement related thereto) until the consummation of the transactions contemplated by such agreement; and (D) a transaction in which the Company becomes a subsidiary of another Person that is not a natural person (a New Parent ) shall not be a Change of Control if no Person is the beneficial owner of more than 50% of the total voting power of the voting stock of such New Parent.

*Continuing Director* means a director who either was a member of our board of directors on the issue date of the Notes or who becomes a member of our board of directors subsequent to that date and whose election, appointment or nomination for election by our shareholders is duly approved by a majority of the continuing directors on our board of directors at the time of such approval by such election or appointment.

**Offer to Purchase**

On or before the 30th day after the occurrence of a Change of Control or a Limited Permitted Asset Sale, as the case may be, we will provide to all holders of the Notes and the Trustee and paying agent a notice of the occurrence of the Change of Control or the Limited Permitted Asset Sale and of the resulting purchase right. Such notice shall state, among other things:

the events causing a Change of Control or Limited Permitted Asset Sale, as the case may be;

the date of the Change of Control or Limited Permitted Asset Sale, as the case may be;

the last date on which a holder may exercise the repurchase right;

the Change of Control Purchase Price or the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price, as applicable;

the Change of Control Purchase Date or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as the case may be;

the name and address of the paying agent; and

the procedures that holders must follow to require us to purchase their Notes. Simultaneously with providing such notice, we will publish a notice containing this information in a newspaper of general circulation in the City of New York or publish the information on our website or through such other public medium as we may use at that time to achieve a broad dissemination of such notice.

To exercise the Change of Control purchase right or Limited Permitted Asset Sale purchase right, a holder of Notes must deliver, on or before the third business day (or as otherwise provided in the notice provided for above) immediately preceding the Change of Control Purchase Date or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as applicable, the Notes to be purchased, duly endorsed for transfer, together with a written purchase notice and the form titled "Form of Purchase Notice" on the reverse side of the Notes duly completed, to the paying agent. Such purchase notice must:

if certificated, state the certificate numbers of the Notes to be delivered for purchase;

S-48

**Table of Contents**

if not certificated, comply with requisite DTC procedures;

state the portion of the principal amount of Notes to be purchased, which must be \$25 or a multiple thereof; and

state that the Notes are to be purchased by us pursuant to the applicable provisions of the Notes and the Indenture.

The holder of such Notes may withdraw any purchase notice (in whole or in part) by a written notice of withdrawal delivered to the paying agent prior to the close of business on the business day immediately preceding the Change of Control Purchase Date or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as applicable. The notice of withdrawal shall:

state the principal amount of the withdrawn Notes;

if certificated Notes have been issued, state the certificate numbers of the withdrawn Notes;

if not certificated, comply with requisite DTC procedures; and

state the principal amount, if any, which remains subject to the purchase notice.

We will be required to purchase the tendered Notes on the Change of Control Purchase Date or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as the case may be. The holder of such Notes will receive payment of the Change of Control Purchase Price or the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price, as applicable, on the later of the Change of Control Purchase Date or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as applicable, and the time of book-entry transfer or the delivery of the Notes. If the paying agent holds money or securities sufficient to pay the Change of Control Purchase Price or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price, as applicable, of the Notes on the Change of Control Purchase Date or the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Date, as applicable, then:

the Notes will cease to be outstanding and interest, including any additional interest, if any, will cease to accrue (whether or not book-entry transfer of the Notes is made or whether or not the Notes are delivered to the paying agent); and

all other rights of the holder of such Notes will terminate (other than the right to receive the Change of Control Purchase Price or the Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price, as applicable).

In connection with any offer to purchase Notes pursuant to a Change of Control purchase notice or Limited Permitted Asset Sale purchase notice, as applicable, the Company will comply, to the extent applicable, with the requirements of Rule 14e-1 under the Exchange Act and any other applicable securities laws and regulations to the extent those laws and regulations are applicable in connection with the repurchase of the Notes as a result of a Change of Control or Limited Permitted Asset Sale. To the extent that the provisions of any securities laws or regulations conflict with the Change of Control provisions of this Indenture, the Company will comply with any applicable securities laws and

regulations and will not be deemed to have breached its obligations under this Indenture by virtue of such compliance.

No Notes may be purchased at the option of holders thereof upon a Change of Control or a Limited Permitted Asset Sale if the principal amount of the Notes has been accelerated, and such acceleration has not been rescinded, on or prior to such date.

The Change of Control purchase rights of the holders of Notes could discourage a potential acquirer of us. The Change of Control purchase feature, however, is not the result of management's knowledge of any specific effort to obtain control of us by any means or part of a plan by management to adopt a series of anti-takeover provisions.



## **Table of Contents**

The term Change of Control is limited to specified transactions and may not include other events that might adversely affect our financial condition. In addition, the requirement that we offer to purchase the Notes upon a Change of Control may not protect holders of Notes in the event of a highly leveraged transaction, reorganization, merger or similar transaction involving us.

The definition of Change of Control includes a phrase relating to the conveyance, transfer, sale, lease or disposition of all or substantially all of our consolidated assets. There is no precise, established definition of the phrase substantially all under applicable law. Accordingly, the ability of a holder of the Notes to require us to purchase its Notes as a result of the conveyance, transfer, sale, lease or other disposition of less than all of our assets may be uncertain.

If a Change of Control were to occur, we may not have enough funds to pay the Change of Control Purchase Price. Our ability to repurchase the Notes for cash may be limited by restrictions on our ability to obtain funds for such repurchase through dividends from our subsidiaries, the terms of our then existing borrowing arrangements or otherwise. Please read Risk Factors Risks of Investing in Our Notes We may not have the ability to raise the funds necessary to purchase our Notes as required upon a change of control and our existing and future debt or lease arrangements may contain limitations on our ability to repurchase the Notes. If we fail to purchase the Notes when required following a Change of Control, we will be in default under the Indenture. In addition, we may in the future incur other indebtedness with similar change in control provisions permitting holders to accelerate or to require us to purchase such indebtedness upon the occurrence of similar events or on some specific dates.

## **Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets**

We may not consolidate with or merge with or into, any other person or sell, assign, convey, transfer or lease all or substantially all of our properties and assets (whether in a single transaction or a series of related transactions) to any person or persons, unless:

the successor person (if any) is a corporation, partnership, trust or other entity organized and validly existing in the Republic of the Marshall Islands, the United States of America, any State of the United States or the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of the Bahamas, the Republic of Panama, the Commonwealth of Bermuda, the British Virgin Islands, the Cayman Islands, the Isle of Man, Cyprus, Norway, Greece, Hong Kong, the United Kingdom, Malta, any Member State of the EU or any other jurisdiction generally acceptable, as determined in good faith by the board of directors of the Company, to institutional lenders in the shipping industries;

the successor person expressly assumes by supplemental indenture executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of, and any interest on, all Notes and the performance or observance of every covenant of the Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

immediately after giving effect to the transaction, no default or event of default shall have occurred and be continuing; and

the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee, prior to the consummation of the proposed transaction, an officers certificate to the foregoing effect and an officers certificate and an opinion of counsel each stating that the proposed transaction and such supplemental indenture comply with the Indenture.

Upon any consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, conveyance, transfer or lease of the properties and assets of the Company in accordance with the foregoing provisions, the successor person formed by such consolidation or into which we are merged or to which such sale, assignment, conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under the Indenture; and thereafter, except in the case of a lease or the sale, conveyance, transfer or disposition of less than all its assets, the Company shall be released from all obligations and covenants under the Indenture and the Notes.

S-50

**Table of Contents**

**Events of Default**

The Notes are subject to the following events of default:

- (1) failure to pay principal of or any premium when due;
- (2) failure to pay any interest when due, continued for 30 days;
- (3) failure to perform or comply with the provisions of the Indenture described in Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets ;
- (4) failure to provide notice of a Change of Control or a Limited Permitted Asset Sale or to repurchase Notes tendered for repurchase following the occurrence of a Change of Control or a Limited Permitted Asset Sale in conformity with the covenant set forth under the caption Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes or Limitation on Asset Sales, respectively;
- (5) failure to perform any of our other covenants in the Indenture, continued for 60 days after written notice has been given by the Trustee, or the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding Notes, as provided in the Indenture;
- (6) any debt for borrowed money of the Company or any subsidiary (excluding debt owed to the Company or any subsidiary) having an aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million or more in the aggregate for all such debt of all such persons (i) is subject to an event of default that results in such debt being due and payable prior to its scheduled maturity or (ii) is subject to a failure to make a principal payment when due at final maturity and such defaulted payment is not made, waived or extended within the applicable grace period;
- (7) any final judgment or decree for the payment of money in excess of \$25.0 million (net of amounts covered by insurance) is entered against us and remains outstanding for a period of 90 consecutive days following entry of such final judgment or decree and is not discharged, waived or stayed; and
- (8) certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization affecting us or any significant subsidiary (as defined under clauses (1) and (2) of Rule 1-02(w) of Regulation S-X of the Exchange Act).

If an event of default, other than an event of default described in clause (8) above, occurs and is continuing, either the Trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Notes may declare the principal amount of the Notes then outstanding and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to be due and payable immediately. If an event of default described in clause (8) above occurs, the principal amount of the Notes then outstanding and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, will automatically become immediately due and payable.

After any such acceleration, but before a judgment or decree based on acceleration, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Notes then outstanding may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul such acceleration if all events of default, other than the non-payment of accelerated principal and any premium, interest or Additional Amounts which have become due as a result of such acceleration, have been cured or waived.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, if we so elect, the sole remedy under the Indenture for an event of default relating to the failure to comply with our annual reporting obligations to the Trustee and the SEC, as described under Reports below, will, after the occurrence of such an event of default, consist exclusively of the right to receive additional interest on the Notes at an annual rate equal to (i) 0.25% per annum of the outstanding principal amount of the Notes for each day during the 90-day period beginning on, and including, the date on which such event of default first occurs and on which such event of default is continuing; and (ii) 0.50% per annum of the outstanding principal amount of the Notes for each day during the 90-day period beginning on, and

**Table of Contents**

including, the 91st day following, and including the date on which such event of default first occurs and on which such event of default is continuing. In the event we do not elect to pay the additional interest upon an event of default in accordance with this paragraph, the Notes will be subject to acceleration as provided above. This additional interest will be payable in arrears on the same dates and in the same manner as regular interest on the Notes. On the 181st day after such event of default first occurs (if not waived or cured prior to such 181st day), such additional interest will cease to accrue and the Notes will be subject to acceleration as provided above. The provisions of the Indenture described in this paragraph will not affect the rights of holders of Notes in the event of the occurrence of any other events of default.

In order to elect to pay additional interest as the sole remedy during the first 180 days after the occurrence of an event of default relating to the failure to comply with the reporting obligations in accordance with the immediately preceding paragraph, we must notify all holders of record of Notes and the Trustee and paying agent of such election on or before the close of business on the second business day prior to the date on which such event of default would otherwise occur. Upon our failure to timely give such notice or pay additional interest, the Notes will be immediately subject to acceleration as provided above.

The Trustee will not be obligated to exercise any of its rights or powers at the request of the holders unless the holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense. Subject to the Indenture and applicable law and upon providing indemnification satisfactory to the Trustee, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Notes will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Notes. The Indenture will provide that in the event an event of default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee will be required in the exercise of its powers to use the degree of care that a prudent person would use in the conduct of his or her own affairs. The Trustee, however, may refuse to follow any direction that conflicts with law or the Indenture or that the Trustee determines is unduly prejudicial to the rights of any other holder.

No holder of Notes will have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to the Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a Trustee, or for any other remedy under the Indenture (except actions for payment of overdue principal and interest), unless:

such holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to the Notes;

the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Notes then outstanding shall have made a written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such event of default in its own name as Trustee under the Indenture;

such holder or holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute such proceedings; and

no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Notes; it being understood and intended that no one or more of such holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all such holders. However, notwithstanding any other provision in the Indenture, the holder of any Note shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on such Note on

**Table of Contents**

the stated maturity date (or, in the case of redemption, on the applicable redemption date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such holder.

Generally, the holders of not less than a majority of the aggregate principal amount of outstanding Notes may waive any default or event of default unless:

we fail to pay the principal of or any interest on any Note when due; or

we fail to comply with any of the provisions of the Indenture that would require the consent of the holder of each outstanding Note affected.

The Indenture provides that within 120 days after the Trustee receives written notice of a default, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all holders of Notes, notice of such default hereunder, unless such default shall have been cured or waived. Except in the case of a default in the payment of principal of or interest on any Note, the Trustee may withhold notice if and so long as the Trustee in good faith determines that withholding notice is in the best interest of the holders of Notes.

Each holder of Notes shall have the right to receive payment or delivery, as the case may be, of:

the principal (including the Change of Control Purchase Price or Limited Permitted Asset Sale Purchase Price, if applicable) of;

accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on; and

Additional Amounts, if any, on

such holder's Notes, on or after the respective due dates expressed or provided for in the Indenture, or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment or delivery, as the case may be, and such right to receive such payment or delivery, as the case may be, on or after such respective dates shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder.

**Modification and Waiver**

We and the Trustee may amend or supplement the Indenture with respect to the Notes with the consent (including consents obtained in connection with any tender offer or exchange offer) of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Notes. In addition, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Notes may waive our compliance in any instance with any provision of the Indenture without notice to the other holders of Notes. However, no amendment, supplement or waiver may be made without the consent of each holder of outstanding Notes affected thereby if such amendment, supplement or waiver would:

change the stated maturity of the principal of or any interest on the Notes;

reduce the principal amount of or interest on the Notes;

reduce the interest rate applicable to the Notes;

change the currency of payment of principal of or interest on the Notes or change any Note's place of payment;

impair the right of any holder to receive payment of principal of and interest on such holder's Notes on or after the due dates therefor or to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on, or with respect to, the Notes;

change the ranking of the Notes;

change our obligation to pay Additional Amounts on any Note;

S-53



**Table of Contents**

waive a default or event of default in the payment of the principal of or interest, if any, on any Note (except a rescission of acceleration of the Notes by the holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding Notes and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);

waive a redemption payment with respect to any Note or change any of the provisions with respect to the redemption of the Notes (other than modifications to the provisions described above under Change of Control Permits Holders to Require us to Purchase Notes or Certain Covenants Limitation on Asset Sales); or

modify provisions with respect to modification, amendment or waiver (including waiver of events of default), except to increase the percentage required for modification, amendment or waiver or to provide for consent of each affected holder of the Notes.

We and the Trustee may amend or supplement the Indenture or the Notes without notice to, or the consent of, the holders of the Notes to:

cure any ambiguity, omission, defect or inconsistency that does not adversely affect the rights of any holder of the Notes in any material respect;

conform the text of the Indenture or the Notes to any provision of this Description of Notes to the extent that such provision in this Description of Notes was intended to be a verbatim recitation of such text in the Indenture or the Notes, as evidenced by an officers' certificate to that effect;

provide for the assumption by a successor person of our obligations under the Notes and the Indenture in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture;

secure the Notes;

add guarantors or obligors with respect to the Indenture or the Notes;

add to our covenants for the benefit of the holders of the Notes or surrender any right or power conferred upon us;

provide for uncertificated Notes, at any time that the Notes are in Certificated Form;

evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment of a Successor Trustee;

comply with the rules of any applicable securities depository;

to comply with the requirements of the TIA and any rules promulgated under the TIA; or

make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any holder in any material respect.

The consent of the holders of the Notes is not necessary under the Indenture to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment. It is sufficient if such consent approves the substance of the proposed amendment. After an amendment under the Indenture becomes effective, we are required to mail to the holders of the Notes a notice briefly describing such amendment. However, the failure to give such notice to all the holders of the Notes, or any defect in the notice, will not impair or affect the validity of the amendment. For any amendment, supplement or waiver, the Trustee will be entitled to conclusively rely on an officers' certificate for a determination regarding the effect on the holders of the Notes.

### **Satisfaction and Discharge**

We may satisfy and discharge our obligations under the Indenture by delivering to the registrar for cancellation all outstanding Notes or depositing with the Trustee or delivering to the holders, as applicable, after all outstanding Notes have become due and payable, or will become due and payable at their stated maturity within one year (including as a result of redemption at our option), cash sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness of all outstanding Notes and all other sums payable under the Indenture by us. Such discharge is subject to terms contained in the Indenture.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Defeasance**

We may terminate at any time all our obligations with respect to the Notes and the Indenture, which we refer to as legal defeasance, except for certain obligations, including those respecting the defeasance trust and obligations to register the transfer or exchange of the Notes, to replace mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Notes and to maintain a registrar and paying agent in respect of the Notes. We may also terminate at any time our obligations with respect to the Notes under the covenants described under Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes, Certain Covenants and Reports, and the operation of certain events of default, which we refer to as covenant defeasance. We may exercise the legal defeasance option notwithstanding our prior exercise of the covenant defeasance option.

If we exercise our legal defeasance option with respect to the Notes, payment of the Notes may not be accelerated because of an event of default with respect thereto. If we exercise the covenant defeasance option with respect to the Notes, payment of the Notes may not be accelerated because of an event of default specified in clause (4), clause (5) (with respect to the covenants described under Certain Covenants or Reports ), clause (6) or clause (7).

The legal defeasance option or the covenant defeasance option with respect to the Notes may be exercised only if:

- (1) we irrevocably deposit in trust with the Trustee cash or U.S. Government obligations or a combination thereof sufficient, in the opinion of a firm of certified public accountants, for the payment of principal of and interest and Additional Amounts, if any, on the Notes to maturity,
- (2) such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance does not constitute a default under the Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument binding us (except for agreements relating to indebtedness being retired simultaneously or in connection with such legal defeasance or covenant defeasance),
- (3) no default or event of default has occurred and is continuing on the date of such deposit and, with respect to covenant defeasance only, at any time during the period ending on the 123rd day after the date of such deposit (other than, if applicable, a default or event of default with respect to the Notes resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposits),
- (4) in the case of the legal defeasance option, we deliver to the Trustee an opinion of counsel stating that:
  - (a) we have received from the Internal Revenue Service (the IRS ) a letter ruling, or there has been published by the IRS a Revenue Ruling, or
  - (b) since the date of the Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable U.S. federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, beneficial owners of the Notes will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such legal defeasance

had not occurred,

- (5) in the case of the covenant defeasance option, we deliver to the Trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that beneficial owners of the Notes will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred,
- (6) we deliver to the Trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that, after the 123rd day after the date of deposit, all money and U.S. Government obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to the terms of the Indenture) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited or caused to be

S-55

## **Table of Contents**

deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to be held in trust will not be subject to any case or proceeding (whether voluntary or involuntary) in respect of the Company under any U.S. federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law, or any decree or order for relief in respect of the Company issued in connection therewith, and

- (7) we deliver to the Trustee an officers certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to the defeasance and discharge of the Notes have been complied with as required by the Indenture.

If we exercise the covenant defeasance option, under the Indenture, the Company will be released from its obligations in the provisions described under Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes.

## **Transfer and Exchange**

We will maintain an office in New York City where the Notes may be presented for registration of transfer or exchange. This office will initially be an office or agency of the Trustee. No service charge will be imposed by us, the Trustee or the registrar for any registration of transfer or exchange of Notes, but any tax or similar governmental charge required by law or permitted by the Indenture because a holder requests any Notes to be issued in a name other than such holder's name will be paid by such holder. We are not required to transfer or exchange any Note surrendered for purchase except for any portion of that Note not being purchased.

We reserve the right to:

vary or terminate the appointment of the security registrar or paying agent; or

approve any change in the office through which any security registrar acts.

## **Payment and Paying Agents**

Payments in respect of the principal and interest on global notes registered in the name of DTC or its nominee will be payable to DTC or its nominee, as the case may be, in its capacity as the registered holder under the Indenture. In the case of certificated Notes, payments will be made in U.S. dollars at the office of the Trustee or, at our option, by check mailed to the holder's registered address (or, if requested by a holder of more than \$1,000,000 principal amount of Notes, by wire transfer to the account designated by such holder). We will make any required interest payments to the person in whose name each Note is registered at the close of business on the record date for the interest payment.

Initially, the Trustee will be designated as our paying agent for payments on the Notes. We may at any time designate additional paying agents or rescind the designation of any paying agent or approve a change in the office through which any paying agent acts.

Subject to the requirements of any applicable abandoned property laws, the Trustee and paying agent shall pay to us upon written request any money held by them for payments on the Notes that remain unclaimed for two years after the date upon which that payment has become due. After payment to us, holders of Notes entitled to the money must look to us for payment. In that case, all liability of the Trustee or paying agent with respect to that money will cease.

## **Purchase and Cancellation**

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

The registrar and paying agent (if other than the Trustee) will forward to the Trustee any Notes, surrendered to them by holders of such Notes for transfer, exchange or payment. All Notes delivered to the Trustee shall be cancelled promptly by the Trustee in the manner provided in the Indenture and may not be reissued or resold. No Notes shall be authenticated in exchange for any Notes cancelled, except as provided in the Indenture.

S-56

## **Table of Contents**

We may, to the extent permitted by law, and directly or indirectly (regardless of whether such Notes are surrendered to us), purchase Notes in the open market or by tender offer at any price or by private agreement.

## **Reports**

So long as any Notes are outstanding, we will (i) file with the SEC within the time periods prescribed by its rules and regulations and applicable to us and (ii) furnish to the Trustee and the holders of the Notes within 15 days after the date on which we would be required to file the same with the SEC pursuant to its rules and regulations (giving effect to any grace period provided by Rule 12b-25 under the Exchange Act), all financial information to the extent required of us to be contained in Form 20-F and, with respect to the annual consolidated financial statements only, a report thereon by our independent auditors. We shall not be required to file any report or other information with the SEC if the SEC does not permit such filing, although such reports will be required to be furnished to the Trustee. Documents filed by us with the SEC via the EDGAR system (or any successor electronic filing system) will be deemed to have been furnished to the Trustee and the holders of the Notes as of the time such documents are filed via EDGAR (or any successor electronic filing system), *provided, however*, that the Trustee shall have no obligation whatsoever to determine whether or not such information, documents or reports have been filed pursuant to EDGAR (or any successor electronic filing system).

## **Replacement of Notes**

We will replace mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost Notes at the expense of the holder of such Notes upon delivery to the Trustee of the mutilated Notes, or evidence of the loss, theft or destruction of the Notes satisfactory to us and the Trustee. In the case of a lost, stolen or destroyed note, indemnity satisfactory to the Trustee and us may be required at the expense of the holder of such Note before a replacement Note will be issued.

## **Notices**

Except as otherwise described herein, notice to registered holders of the Notes will be given to the addresses as they appear in the security register. Notices will be deemed to have been given on the date of such mailing or electronic delivery. Whenever a notice is required to be given by us, such notice may be given by the Trustee on our behalf. We will make any notice we are required to give to holders of Notes available on our website.

## **Governing Law; Waiver of Jury Trial**

The Indenture and the Notes, and any claim, controversy or dispute arising under or related to the Indenture or the Notes, will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. The Indenture will provide that we and the Trustee will irrevocably waive, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, any and all right to trial by jury in any legal proceeding arising out of or relating to the Indenture, the Notes, or the transactions contemplated by the Indenture or the Notes.

## **Concerning the Trustee**

The Trustee, in its individual and any other capacity, may make loans to, accept deposits from, and perform services for us as if it were not the Trustee; however, if it acquires any conflicting interest, it must eliminate such conflict within 90 days, apply to the SEC for permission to continue, or resign.

The Indenture will provide that in case an event of default shall occur and be continuing (which shall not be cured), the Trustee will be required, in the exercise of its power, to use the degree of care of a prudent person in the conduct

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

of such person's own affairs. Subject to such provisions, the Trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the Indenture at the request of any holder of the Notes, unless such holder shall have offered to the Trustee security and indemnity satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense.

The Bank of New York Mellon will be the initial Trustee under the Indenture. Initially, the Trustee will also act as the paying agent, registrar and custodian for the Notes.

S-57



**Table of Contents**

**Book-entry System; Delivery and Form**

***Global Notes***

We will issue the Notes in the form of one or more global notes in definitive, fully registered, book-entry form. The global notes will be deposited with or on behalf of DTC and registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC.

***DTC, Clearstream and Euroclear***

Beneficial interests in the global notes will be represented through book-entry accounts of financial institutions acting on behalf of beneficial owners as direct and indirect participants in DTC. Investors may hold interests in the global notes through either DTC (in the United States), Clearstream Banking, *société anonyme*, Luxembourg, which we refer to as Clearstream, or Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V., as operator of the Euroclear System, which we refer to as Euroclear, in Europe, either directly if they are participants in such systems or indirectly through organizations that are participants in such systems. Clearstream and Euroclear will hold interests on behalf of their participants through customers' securities accounts in Clearstream's and Euroclear's names on the books of their U.S. depositaries, which in turn will hold such interests in customers' securities accounts in the U.S. depositaries' names on the books of DTC.

We understand that:

DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a banking organization within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a clearing corporation within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code and a clearing agency registered under Section 17A of the Exchange Act.

DTC holds securities that its participants deposit with DTC and facilitates the settlement among participants of securities transactions, such as transfers and pledges, in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry changes in participants' accounts, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates.

Direct participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and other organizations.

DTC is owned by a number of its direct participants and by the NYSE and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. (successor to the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc.).

Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as securities brokers and dealers, banks and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a direct participant, either directly or indirectly.

The rules applicable to DTC and its direct and indirect participants are on file with the SEC. We understand that Clearstream is incorporated under the laws of Luxembourg as a professional depository. Clearstream holds securities for its customers and facilitates the clearance and settlement of securities transactions between its customers through electronic book-changes in accounts of its customers, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates. Clearstream provides to its customers, among other things, services for safekeeping, administration, clearance and settlement of internationally traded securities and securities lending and borrowing. Clearstream interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. As a professional depository, Clearstream is subject to regulation by the Luxembourg Commission for the Supervision of the Financial Section. Clearstream customers are recognized financial institutions around the world, including underwriters, securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and other organizations and may include the underwriters. Indirect access to Clearstream is also available to others, such as banks, brokers, dealers and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Clearstream customer either directly or indirectly.

S-58

## Table of Contents

We understand that Euroclear was created in 1968 to hold securities for participants of Euroclear and to clear and settle transactions between Euroclear participants through simultaneous electronic book-entry delivery against payment, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates and any risk from lack of simultaneous transfers of securities and cash. Euroclear provides various other services, including securities lending and borrowing and interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. Euroclear is operated by Euroclear Bank S.A./N.V., which we refer to as the Euroclear Operator, under contract with Euroclear Clearance Systems S.C., a Belgian cooperative corporation, which we refer to as the Cooperative. All operations are conducted by the Euroclear Operator, and all Euroclear securities clearance accounts and Euroclear cash accounts are accounts with the Euroclear Operator, not the Cooperative. The Cooperative establishes policy for Euroclear on behalf of Euroclear participants. Euroclear participants include banks (including central banks), securities brokers and dealers, and other professional financial intermediaries and may include the underwriters. Indirect access to Euroclear is also available to other firms that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Euroclear participant, either directly or indirectly.

We understand that the Euroclear Operator is licensed by the Belgian Banking and Finance Commission to carry out banking activities on a global basis. As a Belgian bank, it is regulated and examined by the Belgian Banking and Finance Commission.

We have provided the descriptions of the operations and procedures of DTC, Clearstream and Euroclear in this prospectus supplement solely as a matter of convenience, and we make no representation or warranty of any kind with respect to these operations and procedures. These operations and procedures are solely within the control of those organizations and are subject to change by them from time to time. None of us, the underwriters or the Trustee takes any responsibility for these operations or procedures, and you are urged to contact DTC, Clearstream and Euroclear or their participants directly to discuss these matters.

We expect that under procedures established by DTC:

upon deposit of the global notes with DTC or its custodian, DTC will credit on its internal system the accounts of direct participants designated by the underwriters with portions of the principal amounts of the global notes; and

ownership of the Notes will be shown on, and the transfer of ownership thereof will be effected only through, records maintained by DTC or its nominee, with respect to interests of direct participants, and the records of direct and indirect participants, with respect to interests of persons other than participants.

The laws of some jurisdictions may require that purchasers of securities take physical delivery of certificated Notes. Accordingly, the ability to transfer interests in the Notes represented by a global note to those persons may be limited. In addition, because DTC can act only on behalf of its participants, who in turn act on behalf of persons who hold interests through participants, the ability of a person having an interest in Notes represented by a global note to pledge or transfer those interests to persons or entities that do not participate in DTC's system, or otherwise to take actions in respect of such interest, may be affected by the lack of physical delivery of a certificated Note in respect of such interest.

So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of a global note, DTC or that nominee will be considered the sole owner or holder of the Notes represented by that global note for all purposes under the Indenture and under the Notes. Except as provided below, owners of beneficial interests in a global note will not be entitled to have Notes represented by that global note registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of

certificated Notes and will not be considered the owners or holders thereof under the Indenture or under the Notes for any purpose, including with respect to the giving of any direction, instruction or approval to the Trustee. Accordingly, each holder owning a beneficial interest in a global note must rely on the procedures of DTC and, if that holder is not a direct or indirect participant, on the procedures of the participant through which that holder owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder of Notes under the Indenture or a global note.

S-59

## **Table of Contents**

Neither we nor the Trustee will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of Notes by DTC, Clearstream or Euroclear, or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records of those organizations relating to the Notes.

Payments on the Notes represented by the global notes will be made to DTC or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner thereof. We expect that DTC or its nominee, upon receipt of any payment on the Notes represented by a global note, will credit participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the global note as shown in the records of DTC or its nominee. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in the global note held through such participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practice as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in the names of nominees for such customers. The participants will be solely responsible for those payments.

Distributions on the Notes held beneficially through Clearstream will be credited to cash accounts of its customers in accordance with its rules and procedures, to the extent received by the U.S. depository for Clearstream.

Securities clearance accounts and cash accounts with the Euroclear Operator are governed by the Terms and Conditions Governing Use of Euroclear and the related Operating Procedures of the Euroclear System, and applicable Belgian law (collectively referred to herein as the Terms and Conditions). The Terms and Conditions govern transfers of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash from Euroclear, and receipts of payments with respect to securities in Euroclear. All securities in Euroclear are held on a fungible basis without attribution of specific certificates to specific securities clearance accounts. The Euroclear Operator acts under the Terms and Conditions only on behalf of Euroclear participants and has no record of or relationship with persons holding through Euroclear participants.

Distributions on the Notes held beneficially through Euroclear will be credited to the cash accounts of its participants in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, to the extent received by the U.S. depository for Euroclear.

### ***Clearance and Settlement Procedures***

Initial settlement for the Notes will be made in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between DTC participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with DTC rules and will be settled in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between Clearstream customers and/or Euroclear participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with the applicable rules and operating procedures of Clearstream and Euroclear, as applicable, and will be settled using the procedures applicable to conventional Eurobonds in immediately available funds.

Cross-market transfers between persons holding directly or indirectly through DTC, on the one hand, and directly or indirectly through Clearstream customers or Euroclear participants, on the other, will be effected through DTC in accordance with DTC rules on behalf of the relevant European international clearing system by the U.S. depository. Such cross-market transactions, however, will require delivery of instructions to the relevant European international clearing system by the counterparty in such system in accordance with its rules and procedures and within its established deadlines (European time). The relevant European international clearing system will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to the U.S. depository to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving the Notes in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day funds settlement applicable to DTC. Clearstream customers and Euroclear participants may not deliver instructions directly to their U.S. depositories.

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

Because of time-zone differences, credits of the Notes received in Clearstream or Euroclear as a result of a transaction with a DTC participant will be made during subsequent securities settlement processing and dated the

S-60

**Table of Contents**

business day following the DTC settlement date. Such credits or any transactions in the Notes settled during such processing will be reported to the relevant Clearstream customers or Euroclear participants on such business day. Cash received in Clearstream or Euroclear as a result of sales of the Notes by or through a Clearstream customer or a Euroclear participant to a DTC participant will be received with value on the DTC settlement date but will be available in the relevant Clearstream or Euroclear cash account only as of the business day following settlement in DTC.

Although DTC, Clearstream and Euroclear have agreed to the foregoing procedures to facilitate transfers of the Notes among participants of DTC, Clearstream and Euroclear, they are under no obligation to perform or continue to perform such procedures and such procedures may be changed or discontinued at any time.

***Certificated Notes***

We will issue certificated Notes to each person that DTC identifies as the beneficial owner of the Notes represented by a global note upon surrender by DTC of the global note if:

DTC notifies us that it is no longer willing or able to act as a depository for such global note or ceases to be a clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act, and we have not appointed a successor depository within 90 days of that notice or becoming aware that DTC is no longer so registered;

an event of default under the Indenture has occurred and is continuing, and DTC requests the issuance of certificated Notes; or

we determine not to have the Notes represented by a global note.

Neither we nor the Trustee will be liable for any delay by DTC, its nominee or any direct or indirect participant in identifying the beneficial owners of the Notes. We and the Trustee may conclusively rely on, and will be fully protected in relying on, instructions from DTC or its nominee for all purposes, including with respect to the registration and delivery, and the respective principal amounts, of the certificated Notes to be issued.

Table of Contents**DESCRIPTION OF OTHER INDEBTEDNESS**

As of September 30, 2018, we had six loan facilities, which we have used primarily to finance vessel acquisitions or vessels under construction and also for working capital purposes. Our applicable ship-owning subsidiaries have granted first-priority mortgages against the relevant vessels in favor of the lenders as security for their obligations under the loan facilities, which totaled 22 vessels as of September 30, 2018. We and our subsidiary ASLLC have provided guarantees in respect of the loan facilities. We have granted a guarantee over our trade receivables in respect of the facility with ABN AMRO Bank N.V. (the ABN AMRO Revolving Facility). These guarantees can be called upon following a payment default. The outstanding principal balances on each loan facility as of September 30, 2018 were as follows:

	<b>As of Sept. 30, 2018</b>	
	Amount Outstanding	Amount Available
<b><i>Debt Facilities</i></b>		
NIBC Bank Facility	\$ 7,820,000	
CACIB Bank Facility	\$ 32,000,000	
ABN/DVB/NIBC Joint Bank Facility <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 147,892,409	
Nordea/SEB Joint Bank Facility <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 124,461,340	
ABN AMRO Facility <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 30,696,643	
ABN AMRO Revolving Facility <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 14,679,318	320,682
<b>Total debt</b>	<b>\$ 357,549,710</b>	<b>320,682</b>
Deferred finance fees	\$ (6,214,587)	
<b>Net total debt</b>	<b>\$ 351,335,123</b>	<b>320,682</b>

(1) In October 2018, \$5.8 million was paid as part of regular debt repayments for the ABN/DVB/NIBC Joint Bank Facility and ABN AMRO Revolving Facility.

(2) The Nordea/SEB facility was partially repaid (\$36.3 million) in October 2018.

(3) This facility was repaid in October 2018.

Future minimum repayments under our loan facilities for each year indicated below are as follows:

	<b>As of Sept. 30, 2018</b>
2018	\$ 8,997,612
2019	\$ 35,990,448
2020	\$ 35,990,448
2021	\$ 38,293,722
2022	\$ 186,564,239
2023	\$ 51,713,241
<b>Total minimum debt payments</b>	<b>\$ 357,549,710</b>



**Debt Facilities**

*NIBC Bank Facility*

On September 12, 2014, one of our subsidiaries entered into a \$13.5 million long-term loan facility with NIBC Bank N.V. to finance a secondhand vessel acquisition which delivered to us in 2014. The facility was drawn down in September 2014 and bears interest at a rate of LIBOR plus 2.90%. Principal repayments on the loans are

S-62

## **Table of Contents**

made on a quarterly basis, with a balloon payment payable with the final instalment. The loan facility matures in September 2021.

### *CACIB Bank Facility*

On May 22, 2014, two of our subsidiaries entered into a \$39.0 million long-term loan facility with Credit Agricole Corporate and Investment Bank to finance two vessels under construction. On March 10, 2016, this facility was refinanced, the lenders provided an additional \$25 million commitment for additional financing and an additional tranche of \$2.3 million was drawn down. The \$25 million of additional financing was drawn and repaid in full during the three-month period ended September 30, 2016. Interest is calculated on each tranche at a rate of LIBOR plus 2.50%. Principal repayments on the loans are made on a quarterly basis, with a balloon payment payable with the final instalment. The full facility matures in 2022.

### *ABN/DVB/NIBC Joint Bank Facility*

On January 13, 2016, 12 of our subsidiaries entered into a \$213 million long-term loan facility with ABN AMRO Bank N.V. ( ABN AMRO ) and DVB Bank America N.V. to refinance existing facilities. The loan was fully drawn down on January 22, 2016. Interest is calculated at a rate of LIBOR plus 2.55%. The loan matures in 2022. On August 4, 2016, an incremental term loan of \$36.6 million was made under the amended facility to fund two vessel acquisitions, and NIBC Bank N.V. joined as an additional lender under the facility. The incremental term loan consists of two tranches, and interest is calculated at a rate of LIBOR plus 2.75%. In May 2017, \$20.1 million was repaid as part of the refinancing of the *Ardmore Sealeader* and *Ardmore Sealifter*. Principal repayments on the loans are made on a quarterly basis, with a balloon payment payable with the final instalment. The additional tranches mature in 2023.

### *Nordea/SEB Joint Bank Facility*

On January 13, 2016, seven of our subsidiaries entered into a \$151 million long-term loan facility with Nordea Bank AB and Skandinaviska Enskilda Banken AB to refinance existing facilities. The loan was fully drawn down on January 22, 2016. Interest is calculated at a rate of LIBOR plus 2.50%. Principal repayments on the loans are made on a quarterly basis, with a balloon payment payable with the final instalment. The loan matures in 2022.

### *ABN AMRO Revolving Facility*

On October 24, 2017, we entered into a \$15 million revolving credit facility with ABN AMRO to fund working capital. Interest is calculated at a rate of LIBOR plus 3.5%. Interest payments are payable on a quarterly basis. The facility matures in October 2019.

## **Long-term Debt Financial Covenants**

Our existing long-term debt facilities described above include certain covenants. The financial covenants require that we:

maintain minimum solvency of not less than 30%;

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

maintain minimum cash and cash equivalents based on the number of vessels owned and chartered-in and 5% of outstanding debt. The required minimum cash balance as of September 30, 2018, was \$22.2 million;

ensure that the aggregate fair market value of the applicable vessels plus any additional collateral is, depending on the facility, no less than 130% of the debt outstanding for the facility;

maintain a corporate net worth of not less than \$150 million; and

maintain positive working capital, excluding balloon maturities.

We were in full compliance with all of our loan covenants as of September 30, 2018.

S-63

**Table of Contents****Finance Lease Obligations**

Commencing in December 2016, we have entered into a number of sale-leaseback transactions relating to certain of our vessels, which transactions are treated as financing transactions for accounting purposes. We used a substantial portion of the net proceeds of these transactions to repay debt relating to the vessels. All of the financing leases include vessel repurchase provisions, some of which require us to repurchase the vessels upon expiration of the financing leases and others which grant us options to repurchase the vessels upon expiration of the financing lease or earlier.

The following table provides additional information about these transactions:

<b>Transaction Date</b>	<b>Vessels Subject to Transaction</b>	<b>Lease Expiration</b>
December 2016	Ardmore Seatrader	2021
May 2017	Ardmore Sealeader, Ardmore Sealifter	2023
January 2018	Ardmore Sealancer	2024
June 2018	Ardmore Endurance, Ardmore Enterprise	2025
October 2018	Ardmore Explorer, Ardmore Encounter	2025
October 2018	Ardmore Dauntless, Ardmore Defender	2030

The following table presents financial information as of September 30, 2018 relating to these finance lease obligations, but excludes information relating to the October 2018 transactions:

	<b>As of Sept. 30, 2018</b>
Current portion of finance lease obligations	\$ 8,593,230
Current portion of deferred finance fees	(338,262)
Non-current portion of finance lease obligations	86,608,707
Non-current portion of deferred finance fees	(1,203,628)
<b>Total finance lease obligations</b>	<b>\$ 93,660,047</b>
Amount receivable in respect of finance leases	(2,880,000)
<b>Adjusted net finance lease obligations</b>	<b>\$ 90,780,047</b>

Future minimum repayments under our finance lease obligations as of September 30, 2018 for each year indicated below, and excluding the effect of the October 2018 transactions, are as follows:

	<b>As of Sept. 30, 2018</b>
2018	\$ 3,475,642
2019	\$ 13,779,462

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

2020	\$ 13,634,436
2021	\$ 19,656,938
2022	\$ 11,884,796
2023	\$ 23,682,824
2024	\$ 10,320,848
2025	\$ 20,771,428
<b>Total minimum finance lease payments</b>	<b>\$ 117,206,374</b>
Less amounts representing interest and deferred finance fees	\$ (23,546,327)
<b>Net minimum finance lease payments</b>	<b>\$ 93,660,047</b>

S-64

---

**Table of Contents**

**MATERIAL U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS**

The following is a discussion of material U.S. federal income tax considerations that may be relevant to prospective holders of our Notes. This discussion is based upon the provisions of the Code, applicable U.S. Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder, legislative history, judicial authority and administrative interpretations, as of the date of this prospectus, all of which are subject to change, possibly with retroactive effect, or are subject to different interpretations. Changes in these authorities may cause the U.S. federal income tax considerations to vary substantially from those described below.

This discussion applies only to holders of our Notes that purchase our Notes at their issue price as part of the initial offering and hold our Notes as capital assets (generally, for investment purposes) and does not comment on all aspects of U.S. federal income taxation that may be important to certain holders in light of their particular circumstances, such as holders subject to special tax rules (e.g., financial institutions, regulated investment companies, real estate investment trusts, insurance companies, traders in securities that have elected the mark-to-market method of accounting for their securities, persons liable for alternative minimum tax, broker-dealers, tax-exempt organizations, persons required to recognize income no later than when such income is included on an applicable financial statement, or former citizens or long-term residents of the United States) or holders that will hold our Notes as part of a straddle, hedge, conversion, constructive sale or other integrated transaction for U.S. federal income tax purposes, all of whom may be subject to U.S. federal income tax rules that differ significantly from those summarized below. If a partnership or other entity or arrangement treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds our Notes, the tax treatment of its partners generally will depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partners in partnerships holding our Notes should consult their own tax advisors to determine the appropriate tax treatment of the partnership's ownership of our Notes.

No ruling has been requested from the IRS regarding any matter affecting us, holders of our Notes, or our shareholders.

Except as otherwise noted, this discussion does not address any U.S. estate, gift or alternative minimum tax considerations or tax considerations arising under the laws of any state, local or non-U.S. jurisdiction. Holders are urged to consult their own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal, state, local and other tax consequences of owning and disposing of our Notes.

**U.S. Federal Income Taxation of U.S. Holders**

As used herein, the term "U.S. Holder" means a beneficial owner of our Notes that is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes: (a) a U.S. citizen or U.S. resident alien; (b) a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation, that was created or organized under the laws of the United States, any state thereof, or the District of Columbia; (c) an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or (d) a trust that either is subject to the supervision of a court within the United States and has one or more U.S. persons with authority to control all of its substantial decisions or has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a U.S. person.

**Certain Additional Payments**

There are circumstances in which we might be required to make payments on a Note that would increase the yield of the Note, as described under "Description of Notes—Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes." In addition, we may be obligated to pay additional interest on the Notes, as described under "Description of Notes—Additional Amounts." We intend to take the position that the possibility of such payments does not result in the

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

Notes being treated as contingent payment debt instruments under the applicable Treasury Regulations. Under these regulations, however, one or more contingencies will not cause a debt instrument to be treated as a contingent payment debt instrument if, as of the issue date, such contingencies are,

S-65

---

## **Table of Contents**

in the aggregate, considered to be remote or incidental. We believe that the potential for additional payments as described under **Description of Notes Change of Control Permits Holders to Require Us to Purchase Notes** and **Description of Notes Additional Amounts** is remote or incidental. Our determination that this contingency is remote or incidental is binding on a U.S. Holder unless such holder discloses its contrary position in the manner required by applicable Treasury Regulations. However, our position is not binding on the IRS. If the IRS takes a contrary position, you may be required to accrue interest income based upon a **comparable yield** (as defined in the Treasury Regulations) determined at the time of issuance of the Notes (which is not expected to differ significantly from the actual yield on the Notes), with adjustments to such accruals when any contingent payments are made that differ from the payments based on the comparable yield. In addition, any income on the sale, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition of the Notes would be treated as interest income rather than as capital gain. You should consult your tax adviser regarding the tax consequences if the Notes were treated as contingent payment debt instruments. The remainder of this discussion assumes that the Notes are not treated as contingent payment debt instruments.

### **Stated Interest on our Notes**

Stated interest on a Note (including Additional Amounts, if any) generally will be taxable to a U.S. Holder as ordinary income at the time it is received or accrued in accordance with the U.S. Holder's regular method of accounting for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Interest paid on our Notes generally will be foreign source income and, depending on your circumstances, treated as either **passive** or **general** category income for purposes of computing allowable foreign tax credits for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

### **Disposition of Notes**

Upon the sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition of a Note, a U.S. Holder generally will recognize gain or loss equal to the difference between the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in our Notes and the proceeds received on the sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition (except to the extent such proceeds are attributable to accrued interest not previously included in income, which will be taxable as ordinary interest income). The proceeds you receive will include the amount of any cash and the fair market value of any other property received for our Notes. Your adjusted tax basis in our Notes generally will equal the amount you paid for our Notes. Gain or loss recognized upon a sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition of our Notes (a) will be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder's holding period is greater than one year at the time of the sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition, or short-term capital gain or loss otherwise and (b) generally will be treated as U.S. source gain or loss, as applicable, for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes. Certain U.S. Holders, including individuals, may be eligible for preferential rates of U.S. federal income tax in respect of long-term capital gains. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitation.

### **Medicare Tax on Unearned Income**

Certain U.S. Holders who are individuals, estates or trusts ( **U.S. Individual Holders** ) are subject to a 3.8% tax on certain investment income, including interest, and gain from the disposition of our Notes, to the extent of their net investment income that, when added to their other modified adjusted gross income, exceeds \$200,000 for an unmarried individual, \$250,000 for a married taxpayer filing a joint return (or a surviving spouse), \$125,000 for a married individual filing a separate return or the dollar amount at which the highest tax bracket begins for an estate or trust. The 3.8% Medicare tax is determined in a different manner than the income tax. U.S. Individual Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the effect, if any, of this tax on their ownership of our Notes.



S-66

## **Table of Contents**

### **Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

In general, information reporting will apply to all payments of interest on, and the proceeds of the sale or other disposition (including a retirement or redemption) of, Notes held by a U.S. Holder unless the U.S. Holder is an exempt recipient, such as a corporation. Backup withholding may apply to these payments unless the U.S. Holder provides the appropriate intermediary with a taxpayer identification number, certified under penalties of perjury, as well as certain other information, or otherwise establishes an exemption from backup withholding. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amount withheld under the backup withholding rules is allowable as a refund or a credit against the U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, provided that the required information is timely provided to the IRS.

### **U.S. Return Disclosure Requirements for Individual U.S. Holders**

U.S. Holders who are individuals and who hold certain specified foreign financial assets, including financial instruments issued by a foreign corporation not held in an account maintained by a financial institution, with an aggregate value in excess of \$50,000 on the last day of a taxable year, or \$75,000 at any time during that taxable year, may be required to report such assets on IRS Form 8938 with their tax return for that taxable year. Penalties apply for failure to properly complete and file IRS Form 8938. Investors are encouraged to consult with their own tax advisors regarding the possible application of this disclosure requirement to their investment in our Notes.

### **U.S. Federal Income Taxation of Non-U.S. Holders**

A beneficial owner of our Notes (other than a partnership or an entity or arrangement treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) that is not a U.S. Holder is referred to herein as a non-U.S. Holder.

### **Interest on our Notes**

In general, a non-U.S. Holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax or withholding tax on interest (including Additional Amounts, if any) on the Notes unless the interest is effectively connected with the non-U.S. Holder's conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, is attributable to a permanent establishment that the non-U.S. Holder maintains in the U.S.). If a non-U.S. Holder is engaged in a U.S. trade or business and the interest is deemed to be effectively connected with that trade or business, the non-U.S. Holder generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the interest in the same manner as if it were a U.S. Holder and, in the case of a non-U.S. Holder that is a corporation, may also be subject to the branch profits tax (currently imposed at a rate of 30% or a lower applicable treaty rate).

### **Disposition of Notes**

In general, a non-U.S. Holder will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax or withholding tax on any gain resulting from the sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other taxable disposition of a Note unless (a) the gain is effectively connected with the non-U.S. Holder's conduct of a trade or business within the United States (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, is attributable to a permanent establishment that the non-U.S. Holder maintains in the United States), in which case the non-U.S. Holder will generally be subject to U.S. federal income tax on such gain in the same manner as if such non-U.S. Holder were a U.S. person and, in addition, if the non-U.S. Holder is a foreign corporation, may also be subject to the branch profits tax described above or (b) the non-U.S. Holder is an individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year of disposition and certain other conditions are met, in which case the non-U.S. Holder may be subject to tax at a 30% rate on gain resulting from the disposition of our Notes which may be offset by U.S.-source capital losses.

S-67

## **Table of Contents**

### **U.S. Estate Tax Considerations**

For purposes of U.S. federal estate tax, our Notes will be treated as situated outside the United States and will not be includible in the gross estate of a non-U.S. Holder at the time of death.

### **Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

Information reporting and backup withholding generally will not apply to payments of interest on Notes held by a non-U.S. Holder if such interest is paid outside the United States by a non-U.S. payor or a non-U.S. middleman (within the meaning of U.S. Treasury Regulations) or the non-U.S. Holder properly certifies under penalties of perjury as to its non-U.S. status and certain other conditions are met or otherwise establishes an exemption.

Any payment received by a non-U.S. Holder from the sale, redemption or other taxable disposition of a Note to or through the U.S. office of a broker will be subject to information reporting and backup withholding unless the non-U.S. Holder properly certifies under penalties of perjury as to its non-U.S. status and certain other conditions are met, or otherwise establishes an exemption. Information reporting and backup withholding generally will not apply to any payment of the proceeds of the sale, redemption or other taxable disposition of a note effected outside the United States by a non-U.S. office of a broker. However, if the broker is considered a U.S. payor or U.S. middleman (within the meaning of U.S. Treasury Regulations), information reporting will apply to the payment of the proceeds of a sale, redemption or other taxable disposition of a note effected outside the United States unless the broker has documentary evidence in its records that the non-U.S. Holder is a non-U.S. Holder and certain other conditions are met. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. The amount of any backup withholding from a payment to a non-U.S. Holder will be allowed as a credit against the non-U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, and may entitle the non-U.S. Holder to a refund, provided that the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

### **MARSHALL ISLANDS TAX CONSIDERATIONS**

The following is a discussion of the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands, and the current laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands applicable to persons who do not reside in, maintain offices in or engage in business in the Republic of the Marshall Islands.

Because we do not, and we do not expect that we will, conduct business or operations in the Republic of the Marshall Islands, and because all documentation related to this offering will be executed outside of the Republic of the Marshall Islands, under current Marshall Islands law you will not be subject to Marshall Islands taxation or withholding on distributions, including upon a return of capital, we make to you as a noteholder or shareholder. In addition, you will not be subject to Marshall Islands stamp, capital gains or other taxes on the purchase, ownership or disposition of our Notes, and you will not be required by the Republic of the Marshall Islands to file a tax return relating to the Notes.

Each prospective holder is urged to consult its tax counsel or other advisor with regard to the legal and tax consequences, under the laws of pertinent jurisdictions, including the Republic of the Marshall Islands, of its investment in us. Further, it is the responsibility of each holder to file all state, local and non-U.S., as well as U.S. federal tax returns that may be required of it.

**Table of Contents****UNDERWRITING**

Under the terms and subject to the conditions in an underwriting agreement dated the date of this prospectus, the underwriters named below, for whom Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC and Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated are acting as representatives, have severally agreed to purchase, and we have agreed to sell to them, severally, the Notes indicated below:

<b>Underwriters</b>	<b>Principal Amount</b>
Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated	\$
B. Riley FBR, Inc.	
BB&T Capital Markets	
Janney Montgomery Scott LLC	
Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.	
Total	\$

The underwriters and the representatives are collectively referred to as the underwriters and the representatives, respectively. The underwriters are offering the Notes subject to their acceptance of the Notes from us and subject to prior sale. The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the several underwriters to pay for and accept delivery of the Notes offered by this prospectus are subject to the approval of certain legal matters by their counsel and to certain other conditions. The underwriters are obligated to take and pay for all of the Notes offered by this prospectus if any such Notes are taken. However, the underwriters are not required to take or pay for the Notes covered by the underwriters' over-allotment option described below.

The underwriters initially propose to offer part of the Notes directly to the public at the offering price listed on the cover page of this prospectus supplement and part to certain dealers. After the initial offering of the notes, the offering price and other selling terms may from time to time be varied by the representatives.

We have granted to the underwriters an option, exercisable for 30 days from the date of this prospectus supplement, to purchase up to an additional \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of the Notes at the public offering price listed on the cover page of this prospectus supplement, less underwriting discounts and commissions. The underwriters may exercise this option solely for the purpose of covering over-allotments, if any, made in connection with the offering of the Notes offered by this prospectus. To the extent the option is exercised, each underwriter will become obligated, subject to certain conditions, to purchase about the same percentage of the additional Notes as the number listed next to the underwriter's name in the preceding table bears to the total number of Notes listed next to the names of all underwriters in the preceding table.

The following table shows the per Note and total public offering price, underwriting discounts and commissions, and proceeds before expenses to us. These amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase up to an additional \$ \_\_\_\_\_ aggregate principal amount of the Notes.

	<b>Per Note</b>	<b>No Exercise</b>	<b>Total Full Exercise</b>
Public offering price	\$	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions to be paid by us	\$	\$	\$
Proceeds, before expenses, to us	\$	\$	\$

The estimated offering expenses payable by us, exclusive of the underwriting discounts and commissions, are approximately \$ . The underwriting discounts and commissions to be paid by us represent % of the total amount of this offering. We have also agreed to pay certain of the underwriters a structuring fee equal to

S-69

## **Table of Contents**

up to 1% of the aggregate offering amount (including the aggregate principal amount of any Notes issued upon exercise by the underwriters of their option to purchase additional Notes) and to pay certain legal fees and expenses of the underwriters relating to this offering not to exceed \$150,000.

The Notes are a new issue of securities with no established trading market. Ardmore Shipping Corporation will apply for the listing of the Notes on the NYSE under the symbol ARDB. If approved for listing, trading of the Notes on the NYSE is expected to commence within 30 days after they are first issued. Ardmore has been advised by the underwriters that the underwriters intend to make a market in the Notes but are not obligated to do so and may discontinue market making at any time without notice. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for the Notes.

In order to facilitate the offering of the Notes, the underwriters may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of the Notes. Specifically, the underwriters may sell more Notes than they are obligated to purchase under the underwriting agreement, creating a short position. A short sale is covered if the short position is no greater than the number of Notes available for purchase by the underwriters under the over-allotment option. The underwriters can close out a covered short sale by exercising the over-allotment option or purchasing Notes in the open market. In determining the source of the Notes to close out a covered short sale, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the open market price of Notes compared to the price available under the over-allotment option. The underwriters may also sell Notes in excess of the over-allotment option, creating a naked short position. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing Notes in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the Notes in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in this offering. As an additional means of facilitating this offering, the underwriters may bid for, and purchase, Notes in the open market to stabilize the price of the Notes.

These activities may raise or maintain the market price of the Notes above independent market levels or prevent or retard a decline in the market price of the Notes. The underwriters are not required to engage in these activities and may end any of these activities at any time.

We and the underwriters have agreed to indemnify each other against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available on websites maintained by one or more underwriters, or selling group members, if any, participating in this offering. The representatives may agree to allocate a number of the Notes to underwriters for sale to their online brokerage account holders. Internet distributions will be allocated by the representatives to underwriters that may make Internet distributions on the same basis as other allocations.

We expect to deliver the Notes against payment for the Notes on or about the date specified in the last paragraph of the cover page of this prospectus supplement, which will be the fifth business day following the date of the pricing of the Notes ( T+5 ). Under Rule 15c6-1 of the Exchange Act, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in two business days, unless the parties to a trade expressly agree otherwise. Accordingly, purchasers who wish to trade notes on the date of pricing or the next succeeding business day will be required, by virtue of the fact that the Notes initially will settle in T+5, to specify alternative settlement arrangements to prevent a failed settlement.

## **Other Relationships**

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment

management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the underwriters and their respective affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various financial advisory and investment banking services for us, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

S-70



## **Table of Contents**

In addition, in the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and their respective affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers and may at any time hold long and short positions in such securities and instruments. Such investment and securities activities may involve our securities and instruments. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may also make investment recommendations or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long or short positions in such securities and instruments.

## **No Sale of Similar Securities**

We have agreed that we will not offer, sell, contract to sell or otherwise dispose of any debt securities of the Company or warrants to purchase or otherwise acquire debt securities of the Company substantially similar to the Notes (other than the Notes, commercial paper issued in the ordinary course of business or securities or warrants) for a period of 30 days after the date of this prospectus supplement without first obtaining the written consent of the representatives.

## **Selling Restrictions**

### ***European Economic Area***

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a Relevant Member State ), each underwriter has represented and agreed that with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that Relevant Member State (the Relevant Implementation Date ) it has not made and will not make an offer of Notes which are the subject to the offering contemplated by this prospectus to the public in that Relevant Member State other than:

- A. to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- B. to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the representatives nominated by the issuer for any such offer; or
- C. in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive, provided that no such offer of Notes shall require the issuer or any underwriter to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression an offer of Notes to the public in relation to any Notes in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase Notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Member State, the expression Prospectus Directive means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU), and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State.

### ***United Kingdom***

Each underwriter has represented and agreed that:

- A. it has only communicated or caused to be communicated and will only communicate or cause to be communicated an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of Section 21 of the FSMA) received by it in connection with the issue or sale of the Notes in circumstances in which Section 21(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ( FSMA ) would not, if the issuer was not an authorized person; and

S-71

---

**Table of Contents**

- B. it has complied and will comply with all applicable provisions of the FSMA with respect to anything done by it in relation to the Notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom.

***Hong Kong***

Each underwriter (i) has not offered or sold and will not offer or sell in Hong Kong, by means of any document, any Notes other than (a) to professional investors as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong (the SFO) and any rules made under that Ordinance; or (b) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a prospectus as defined in the Companies (Winding Up and Miscellaneous Provisions) Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong or which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of that Ordinance; and (ii) has not issued or had in its possession for the purposes of issue, and will not issue or have in its possession for the purposes of issue, whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere, any advertisement, invitation or document relating to the Notes, which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to the Notes which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to professional investors as defined in the SFO and any rules made under that Ordinance.

***Japan***

The Notes have not been and will not be registered pursuant to Article 4, Paragraph 1 of the Financial Instruments and Exchange Act. Accordingly, none of the Notes nor any interest therein may be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the benefit of a resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the Financial Instruments and Exchange Act and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan in effect at the relevant time.

***Singapore***

This prospectus supplement has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, each underwriter has not offered or sold any Notes or caused such Notes to be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase and will not offer or sell such Notes or cause such Notes to be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, and has not circulated or distributed, nor will it circulate or distribute, this prospectus supplement or any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of such Notes, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the SFA), (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275, of the SFA, or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the Notes are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- A. a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or

- B. a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor,

S-72

**Table of Contents**

securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the Notes pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA, except:

(i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the SFA or to a relevant person (as defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA), or to any person arising from an offer referred to in Section 275(1A), or Section 276(4)(i)(B) of the SFA;

(ii) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer;

(iii) where the transfer is by operation of law;

(iv) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA; or

(v) as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore.

**Addresses of the Underwriters**

The addresses of the underwriters are as follows:

Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC

1585 Broadway

New York, NY 10036

Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated

1 South Street, 17th Floor

Baltimore, MD 21202

B. Riley FBR, Inc.

299 Park Avenue, 21st Floor

New York, NY 10171

BB&T Capital Markets

901 East Byrd Street, Suite 300

Richmond, VA 23219

Janney Montgomery Scott LLC

1717 Arch Street

Philadelphia, PA 19103

Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.

277 Park Avenue

New York, NY 10172

S-73

**Table of Contents****EXPENSES**

The following table sets forth costs and expenses, other than any underwriting discounts and commissions, we expect to incur in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities covered by this prospectus. All amounts are estimated except the FINRA filing fee.

U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$ *
FINRA filing fee	\$ *
Legal fees and expenses	\$ 300,000
Accounting fees and expenses	\$ 25,000
Trustee fees and expenses	\$ 10,000
Printing costs	\$ 25,000
Miscellaneous	\$ 15,000
Total	\$ 375,000

\* Previously paid

**SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF CIVIL LIABILITIES**

We are incorporated under the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands as a corporation. The Republic of the Marshall Islands has a less developed body of securities laws as compared to the United States and provides protections for investors to a significantly lesser extent.

Most of our directors and officers and those of our controlled affiliates are residents of countries other than the United States. Substantially all of our and our subsidiaries' assets and a substantial portion of the assets of our directors and officers are located outside of the United States. As a result, it may be difficult or impossible for U.S. investors to effect service of process within the United States upon us or our subsidiaries or to realize against us or them judgments obtained in U.S. courts, including judgments predicated upon the civil liability provisions of the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States. However, we have expressly submitted to the jurisdiction of the U.S. federal and New York state courts sitting in the City of New York for the purpose of any suit, action or proceeding with respect to the issuance of the Notes arising under the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States, and we have appointed Seward & Kissel LLP to accept service of process on our behalf in any such action.

Seward & Kissel LLP, our counsel as to Marshall Islands law, has advised us that there is uncertainty as to whether the courts of the Republic of the Marshall Islands would (1) recognize or enforce against us or our directors and officers judgments of courts of the United States based on civil liability provisions of applicable U.S. federal and state securities laws, or (2) impose liabilities against us or our directors and officers or those of our controlled affiliates in original actions brought in the Republic of the Marshall Islands.

We are a Marshall Islands corporation, and our principal executive office is located outside of the United States in Bermuda, although we also have offices in Ireland, Singapore and the United States. Some of our directors, officers and the experts named in this registration statement reside outside the United States. In addition, a substantial portion of our assets and the assets of certain of our directors, officers and experts are located outside of the United States. As a result, you may have difficulty serving legal process within the United States upon us or any of these persons. You may also have difficulty enforcing, both in and outside the United States, judgments you may obtain in U.S. courts

against us or these persons.

### **LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of the Notes offered hereby and certain other legal matters will be passed upon for us by Perkins Coie LLP, Portland, Oregon. Certain tax matters and other legal matters with respect to the laws of the Republic of the Marshall Islands will be passed upon for us by our counsel as to U.S. tax law and Marshall Islands law, Seward & Kissel LLP, New York, New York. Davis Polk & Wardwell LLP, New York, New York, will pass upon certain legal matters in connection with the offering on behalf of the underwriters.

S-74



**Table of Contents**

**EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements of Ardmore Shipping Corporation appearing in Ardmore Shipping Corporation's Annual Report on Form 20-F for the year ended December 31, 2017, have been audited by Ernst & Young, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon, included therein, and incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements are incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

**WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form F-3 regarding the securities covered by this prospectus. This prospectus does not contain all of the information found in the registration statement. For further information regarding us and the securities offered in this prospectus, you should to review the full registration statement, including its exhibits. In addition, we file annual and other reports with, and furnish information to, the SEC. You may inspect and copy any document we file with or furnish to the SEC at the public reference facilities maintained by the SEC at 100 F Street, NE, Washington, D.C. 20549. Copies of this material can also be obtained upon written request from the Public Reference Section of the SEC at that address, at prescribed rates, or from the SEC's website on the internet at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) free of charge. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on public reference rooms. You can also obtain information about us at the offices of the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., 11 Wall Street, New York, New York 10005.

As a foreign private issuer, we are exempt under the Exchange Act from, among other things, certain rules prescribing the furnishing and content of proxy statements, and our executive officers, directors and principal shareholders are exempt from the reporting and short-swing profit recovery provisions contained in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. In addition, we are not required under the Exchange Act to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as U.S. companies whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act, including the filing of quarterly reports or current reports on Form 8-K; however, we voluntarily furnish to the SEC quarterly reports on Form 6-K, including financial statements and other information.

**INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE**

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference into this prospectus information that we file with the SEC. This means that we can disclose important information to you without actually including the specific information in this prospectus by referring you to other documents filed separately with the SEC. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus. Information that we later provide to the SEC, and which is deemed to be filed with the SEC, automatically will update information previously filed with the SEC, and may replace information in this prospectus.

We incorporate by reference into this prospectus the documents listed below:

our Annual Report on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017;

our Reports on Form 6-K filed with the SEC on May 2, 2018 (which contains our unaudited condensed interim consolidated financial statements and related notes for the three months ended March 31, 2018 and March 31, 2017), May 3, 2018, June 14, 2018, July 31, 2018 (which contains our unaudited condensed

## Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

interim consolidated financial statements and related notes for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and June 30, 2017), August 31, 2018, September 27, 2018, and November 7, 2018 (which contains our unaudited condensed interim consolidated financial statements and related notes for the three and nine months ended September 30, 2018 and September 30, 2017); and

any subsequent Reports on Form 6-K filed with the SEC prior to the termination of this offering that we identify in such Reports as being incorporated by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

S-75

**Table of Contents**

These reports contain important information about us, our financial condition and our results of operations.

You may obtain any of the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus from the SEC through its public reference facilities or its website at the addresses provided above. You also may request a copy of any document incorporated by reference in this prospectus (excluding any exhibits to those documents, unless the exhibit is specifically incorporated by reference in this document), at no cost, by visiting our internet website at *www.ardmoreshipping.com*, or by writing or calling us at the following address:

Ardmore Shipping Corporation

Belvedere Building

69 Pitts Bay Road, Ground Floor

Pembroke, HM08 Bermuda

+1 441 405 7800

The information on our website does not constitute a part of this prospectus supplement.

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with any information. You should not assume that the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of each document. The information contained in our website is not part of this prospectus.

In reviewing any agreements included as exhibits to the registration statement relating to the securities covered by this prospectus or to other SEC filings incorporated by reference into this prospectus or any prospectus supplement, please be aware that these agreements are attached as exhibits to provide you with information regarding their terms and are not intended to provide any other factual or disclosure information about us or the other parties to the agreements. The agreements may contain representations and warranties by each of the parties to the applicable agreement, which representations and warranties may have been made solely for the benefit of the other parties to the applicable agreement and, as applicable:

should not in all instances be treated as categorical statements of fact, but rather as a way of allocating the risk to one of the parties if those statements prove to be inaccurate;

have been qualified by disclosures that may have been made to the other party in connection with the negotiation of the applicable agreement, which disclosures are not necessarily reflected in the agreement;

may apply standards of materiality in a way that is different from what may be viewed as material to you or other investors; and

were made only as of the date of the applicable agreement or such other date or dates as may be specified in the agreement and are subject to more recent developments.

Accordingly, these representations and warranties may not describe the actual state of affairs as of the date they were made or at any other time and should not be relied upon by investors in considering whether to invest in our securities.

S-76

**Table of Contents**

**GLOSSARY OF SHIPPING TERMS**

The following are definitions of certain terms that are commonly used in the shipping industry.

***Aframax tanker.*** A tanker ranging in size from 85,000 dwt to 120,000 dwt.

***Annual survey.*** The inspection of a vessel pursuant to international conventions, by a classification society surveyor, on behalf of the flag state, that takes place every year.

***Ballast.*** A voyage during which the vessel is not laden with cargo.

***Bareboat charter.*** A charter of a vessel under which the vessel-owner is usually paid a fixed daily or monthly rate for a certain period of time during which the charterer is responsible for the ship operating expenses and voyage expenses of the vessel and for the management of the vessel. In this case, all voyage related costs, including vessel fuel, or bunker, and port dues as well as all vessel operating expenses, such as day-to-day operations, maintenance, crewing and insurance are paid by the charterer. A bareboat charter is also known as a demise charter or a time charter by demise and involves the use of a vessel usually over longer periods of time ranging over several years. The owner of the vessel receives monthly charter hire payments on a per day basis and is responsible only for the payment of capital costs related to the vessel.

***Bunkers.*** Fuel oil used to operate a vessel's engines, generators and boilers.

***Charter.*** The hiring of a vessel, or use of its carrying capacity, for either (1) a specified period of time or (2) to carry a cargo for a fixed fee from a loading port to a discharging port. The contract for a charter is called a charterparty.

***Charterer.*** The party that hires a vessel pursuant to a charter.

***Charter hire.*** Money paid to the vessel-owner by a charterer for the use of a vessel under a time charter or bareboat charter. Such payments are usually made during the course of the charter every 15 or 30 days in advance or in arrears by multiplying the daily charter rate times the number of days and, under a time charter only, subtracting any time the vessel was deemed to be off-hire. Under a bareboat charter such payments are usually made monthly and are calculated on a 360 or 365 day calendar year basis.

***Charter rate.*** The amount of money agreed between the charterer and the vessel-owner accrued on a daily or monthly basis that is used to calculate the vessel's charter hire.

***Classification society.*** An independent society that certifies that a vessel has been built and maintained according to the society's rules for that type of vessel and complies with the applicable rules and regulations of the country in which the vessel is registered, as well as the international conventions which that country has ratified. A vessel that receives its certification is referred to as being in class as of the date of issuance.

***Clean petroleum products or CPP.*** Liquid products refined from crude oil, whose color is less than or equal to 2.5 on the National Petroleum Association scale. Clean products include naphtha, jet fuel, gasoline and diesel/gasoil.

***Contracts of affreightment.*** A contract of affreightment, or COA, relates to the carriage of specific quantities of cargo with multiple voyages over the same route and over a specific period of time which usually spans a number of years. A COA does not designate the specific vessels or voyage schedules that will transport the cargo, thereby providing both the charterer and ship owner greater operating flexibility than with voyage charters alone. The charterer has the

flexibility to determine the individual voyage scheduling at a future date while the ship owner may use different ships to perform these individual voyages. As a result, COAs are mostly entered into by large

S-77

**Table of Contents**

fleet operators such as pools or ship owners with large fleets of the same vessel type. All of the ship's operating, voyage and capital costs are borne by the ship owner while the freight rate normally is agreed on a per cargo ton basis.

***Deadweight ton or dwt.*** A unit of a vessel's capacity for cargo, fuel oil, stores and crew, measured in metric tons of 1,000 kilograms. A vessel's dwt or total deadweight is the total weight necessary to submerge the vessel to its maximum permitted draft.

***Dirty petroleum products or dirty products.*** Liquid products refined from crude oil, whose color is greater than 2.5 on the National Petroleum Association scale. Dirty products usually require heating during a voyage, because their viscosity or waxiness makes discharge difficult at ambient temperatures.

***Double-hull.*** Hull construction design in which a vessel has an inner and outer side and bottom separated by void space, usually 2 meters in width.

***Draft.*** Vertical distance between the waterline and the bottom of the vessel's keel.

***Drydocking.*** The removal of a vessel from the water for inspection and/or repair of those parts of a vessel which are below the water line. During drydockings, which are required to be carried out periodically, certain mandatory classification society inspections are carried out and relevant certifications issued. Drydockings are generally required once every 30 to 60 months.

***Eco-Design.*** Newbuildings that are designed and constructed to improve fuel efficiency and optimize voyage performance.

***Eco-Mod.*** The modification of existing vessels to improve fuel efficiency and optimize voyage performance.

***Gross ton.*** A unit of weight equal to 2,240 pounds.

***Hull.*** Shell or body of a vessel.

***IMO.*** International Maritime Organization, a United Nations agency that issues international regulations and standards for seaborne transportation.

***ISM Code.*** International Safety Management Code for the Safe Operation of Ships and for Pollution Prevention, which, among other things, requires vessel-owners to obtain a safety management certification for each vessel they manage.

***Metric ton.*** A unit of weight equal to 1,000 kilograms.

***MR Product Tanker.*** A vessel ranging from 25,000 dwt to 59,999 dwt and classed for petroleum or IMO 3 cargoes (e.g. vegetable oils, caustic soda, or liquid fertilizer).

***Newbuilding.*** A new vessel under construction or just completed.

***Off-hire.*** The period a vessel is unable to perform the services for which it is required under a time charter. Off-hire periods typically include days spent undergoing repairs and drydocking, whether or not scheduled.

***OPA.*** Oil Pollution Act of 1990 of the U.S. (as amended).

***Period charter.*** A period charter is an industry term referring to both time and bareboat charters. These charters are referred to as period charters or period market charters due to use of the vessel by the charterer over a specific period of time.

S-78



## **Table of Contents**

**Product tanker.** A tanker designed for the carriage of refined petroleum products whose cargo tanks are usually coated with epoxy-based paint to facilitate the cleaning of the tanker between the carriage of different cargoes and to prevent product contamination and hull corrosion. A product tanker typically has multiple cargo tanks capable of handling different cargoes simultaneously. The vessel may have equipment designed for the loading and unloading of cargoes with a high viscosity.

**Protection and indemnity, or P&I insurance.** Insurance obtained through mutual associations (called Clubs ) formed by vessel-owners to provide liability insurance protection against a large financial loss by one member by contribution towards that loss by all members. To a great extent, the risks are reinsured.

**Refined petroleum products.** Refined crude oil products, such as fuel oils, gasoline and jet fuel.

**Scrapping.** The disposal of old or damaged vessel tonnage by way of sale as scrap metal.

**Sister ship.** Vessels of the same type and specification.

**Spot charter.** A spot charter is an industry term referring to both voyage and trip time charters. These charters are referred to as spot charters or spot market charters due to their short term duration, consisting mostly of a single voyage between one load port and one discharge port.

**Spot market.** The market for the immediate chartering of a vessel, usually for single voyage.

**Strict liability.** Liability that is imposed without regard to fault.

**Tanker.** Vessel designed for the carriage of liquid cargoes in bulk with cargo space consisting of many tanks. Tankers carry a variety of products including crude oil, refined petroleum products, liquid chemicals and liquid gas.

**Time charter.** A time charter is a contract under which a charterer pays a fixed daily hire rate on a semi-monthly or monthly basis for a fixed period of time for use of the vessel. Subject to any restrictions in the charter, the charterer decides the type and quantity of cargo to be carried and the ports of loading and unloading. The charterer pays the voyage related expenses such as fuel, canal tolls, and port charges. The vessel-owner pays all vessel operating expenses such as the management expenses and crew costs as well as for the capital costs of the vessel. Any delays at port or during the voyages are the responsibility of the charterer, except for certain specific exceptions such as loss of time arising from vessel breakdown and routine maintenance.

**Time charter equivalent (TCE) rates.** Time charter equivalent, or TCE, rates, are a standard industry measure of the average daily revenue performance of a vessel. The TCE rate achieved on a given voyage is expressed in U.S. dollars per day and is generally calculated by subtracting voyage expenses, including bunkers and port charges, from voyage revenue and dividing the net amount (time charter equivalent revenues) by the number of days in the period.

**Trip time charter.** A trip time charter is a short-term time charter where the vessel performs a single voyage between load port(s) and discharge port(s) and the charterer pays a fixed daily hire rate on a semi-monthly basis for use of the vessel. The difference between a trip time charter and a voyage charter is only in the form of payment for use of the vessel and the respective financial responsibilities of the charterer and vessel-owner as described under time charter and voyage charter.

**Ton.** See Metric ton.

***Vessel operating expenses.*** The costs of operating a vessel that are incurred during a charter, primarily consisting of crew wages and associated costs, insurance premiums, lubricants and spare parts, and repair and maintenance costs. Vessel operating expenses exclude fuel and port charges, which are known as voyage expenses. For a time charter, the vessel-owner pays vessel operating expenses. For a bareboat charter, the charterer pays vessel operating expenses.

S-79

**Table of Contents**

***Voyage charter.*** A voyage charter involves the carriage of a specific amount and type of cargo from specific load port(s) to specific discharge port(s), subject to various cargo handling terms. Most of these charters are of a single voyage nature between two specific ports, as trading patterns do not encourage round voyage trading. The owner of the vessel receives one payment derived by multiplying the tons of cargo loaded on board by the cost per cargo ton, as agreed to transport that cargo between the specific ports. The owner is responsible for the payment of all expenses including voyage, operating and capital costs of the vessel. The charterer is typically responsible for any delay at the loading or discharging ports.

***Voyage expenses.*** Expenses incurred due to a vessel's traveling from a loading port to a discharging port, such as fuel (bunker) cost, port expenses, agent's fees, canal dues and extra war risk insurance, as well as commissions.

Table of Contents

PROSPECTUS

**ARDMORE SHIPPING CORPORATION**

**\$500,000,000**

**Common Stock**

**Preferred Stock**

**Debt Securities**

**Convertible Debt Securities**

**Warrants**

**Units**

**1,523,771 Shares of Common Stock Offered by the Selling Shareholder**

We may, from time to time in one or more offerings, offer and sell up to \$500,000,000 in the aggregate of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt securities, warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt securities, and units of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt securities or warrants, in any combination. The selling shareholder may also offer and sell, from time to time, up to 1,523,771 common shares. We will not receive any of the proceeds from the sale of our common shares by the selling shareholder.

This prospectus provides a general description of the securities we or the selling shareholder may offer. We will provide the specific terms of the securities offered by us, and may provide additional information about the securities offered by the selling shareholder, in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you in connection with offerings by us or the selling shareholder. You should read carefully this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, as well as any documents incorporated by reference, before you invest in any of our securities. **This prospectus may not be used to offer or sell any securities, other than by the selling shareholder, unless accompanied by the applicable prospectus supplement.**

Our common stock is listed on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol `ASC`. On August 25, 2016, the last reported sales price of our common stock was \$7.11 per share. The applicable prospectus supplement will contain information, where applicable, as to any other listing on the New York Stock Exchange or any securities market or

other exchange of the securities, if any, covered by the prospectus supplement.

We will, and the selling shareholder identified in this prospectus (or its donees, pledgees, transferees or other successors-in-interest) may, sell these securities directly to investors, through agents designated from time to time or to or through underwriters or dealers, who may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions. For additional information on the methods of sale, you should refer to the section entitled "Plan of Distribution" in this prospectus. If any underwriters are involved in the sale of any securities by us or the selling shareholder with respect to which this prospectus is being delivered, the names of such underwriters and any applicable commissions or discounts will be set forth in a prospectus supplement. The price to the public of such securities and the net proceeds, if any, we expect to receive from such sale will also be set forth in a prospectus supplement.

**Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Please read the sections entitled Forward-Looking Statements and Risk Factors beginning on pages 3 and 4 of this prospectus, respectively, and in the applicable prospectus supplement, as well as documents which are incorporated by reference herein and therein.**

**Neither the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**The date of this prospectus is August 26, 2016**

**Table of Contents**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
<b><u>About This Prospectus</u></b>	2
<b><u>Forward-Looking Statements</u></b>	3
<b><u>Ardmore Shipping Corporation</u></b>	3
<b><u>Risk Factors</u></b>	4
<b><u>Use of Proceeds</u></b>	6
<b><u>Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges</u></b>	6
<b><u>Description of Capital Stock</u></b>	7
<b><u>Marshall Islands Company Considerations</u></b>	12
<b><u>Description of Debt Securities</u></b>	16
<b><u>Description of Convertible Debt Securities</u></b>	24
<b><u>Use of Global Securities</u></b>	33
<b><u>Description of Warrants</u></b>	35
<b><u>Description of Units</u></b>	36
<b><u>Selling Shareholder</u></b>	37
<b><u>Tax Considerations</u></b>	38
<b><u>Plan of Distribution</u></b>	44
<b><u>Service of Process and Enforcement of Civil Liabilities</u></b>	47
<b><u>Legal Matters</u></b>	47
<b><u>Experts</u></b>	47
<b><u>Where You Can Find More Information</u></b>	48
<b><u>Incorporation of Documents by Reference</u></b>	49
<b><u>Expenses</u></b>	50

**Table of Contents**

**ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS**

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form F-3 that we have filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (or *SEC* or *Commission*) using a shelf registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may sell from time to time common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt securities, warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock, debt securities or convertible debt securities, and units of common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt securities or warrants, in any combination, in one or more offerings up to an aggregate offering price of \$500,000,000, and the selling shareholder referred to in the prospectus may offer and resell from time to time up to 1,523,771 shares of our common stock as described in this prospectus. This prospectus generally describes us and the securities we and the selling shareholders may offer. Each time we or the selling shareholder offers securities with this prospectus, we will or may, as applicable, provide this prospectus and a prospectus supplement that will describe, among other things, the specific amounts and prices of the securities being offered and the terms of the offering. The prospectus supplement may also add to, update or change information in this prospectus. If information varies between this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in the prospectus supplement.

This prospectus does not cover the issuance of any shares of our common stock by us to the selling shareholder, and we will not receive any of the proceeds from any sale of common shares by the selling shareholder. Except for any underwriting discounts, selling commissions, transfer taxes and fees and any expenses incurred in connection with any underwritten offering of the selling shareholder's shares, all of which are to be paid by the selling shareholder, we have agreed to pay the expenses incurred in connection with the registration of the common shares owned by the selling shareholder covered by this prospectus.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein. Neither we nor the selling shareholder have authorized anyone to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with additional, different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. This prospectus may only be used where it is legal to sell our securities. You should not assume that the information contained in this prospectus, or in any prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus, is accurate as of any date other than its date regardless of the time of delivery of the prospectus, prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus or any sale of our securities. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects, as well as other information, may have changed since such dates.

Unless otherwise indicated, references in this prospectus to Ardmore Shipping Corporation, we, us and our and similar terms refer to Ardmore Shipping Corporation and/or one or more of its subsidiaries, except that those terms, when used in this prospectus in connection with the securities described herein, shall mean specifically Ardmore Shipping Corporation. Unless otherwise indicated, the term selling shareholder as used in this prospectus means the selling shareholder referred to in this prospectus and its donees, pledgees, transferees and other successors-in-interest.

Unless otherwise indicated, all references in this prospectus to dollars and \$ are to, and amounts are presented in, U.S. Dollars, and financial information presented in this prospectus is prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (or *GAAP*).

You should read carefully this prospectus, any prospectus supplement, and the additional information described below under the headings Where You Can Find More Information and Incorporation of Documents by Reference.





**Table of Contents**

**FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

All statements, other than statements of historical fact, included in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus and any prospectus supplements are forward-looking statements. The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995, as amended, provides a safe harbor for forward-looking statements to encourage companies to provide prospective information about themselves so long as they identify these statements as forward-looking and provide meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ from the projected results. In addition, we and our representatives may from time to time make other oral or written statements that are also forward-looking statements. Such statements include, in particular, statements about our plans, strategies, business prospects, changes and trends in our business, and the markets in which we operate. In some cases, you can identify the forward-looking statements by the use of words such as may, will, could, should, would, expect, anticipate, intend, forecast, believe, estimate, predict, continue or the negative of these terms or other common terminology.

Forward-looking statements are made based upon management's current plans, expectations, estimates, assumptions and beliefs concerning future events affecting us. Forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and assumptions, including those risks discussed in Risk Factors and Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations set forth in other reports we file with the SEC and that are incorporated into this prospectus by reference. The risks, uncertainties and assumptions involve known and unknown risks and are inherently subject to significant uncertainties and contingencies, many of which are beyond our control. We caution that forward-looking statements are not guarantees and that actual results could differ materially from those expressed or implied in the forward-looking statements.

We undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statement to reflect events or circumstances after the date on which such statement is made or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events. New factors emerge from time to time, and it is not possible for us to predict all of these factors. In addition, we cannot assess the effect of each such factor on our business or the extent to which any factor, or combination of factors, may cause actual results to be materially different from those contained in any forward-looking statement, and accordingly, you should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements.

**ARDMORE SHIPPING CORPORATION**

We provide seaborne transportation of petroleum products and chemicals worldwide to oil majors, national oil companies, oil and chemical traders, and chemical companies, with our modern, fuel-efficient fleet of mid-size product and chemical tankers. Our fuel-efficient operations are designed to enhance our investment returns and provide value-added service to our customers. We believe we are on the forefront of fuel efficiency and emissions reduction trends and are well-positioned to capitalize on these developments by engaging in the construction of Eco-design vessels, modifying ships to improve fuel efficiency, and equipping our fleet with engine diagnostic and ship performance management systems to optimize voyage performance. We have no related-party transactions concerning our vessel operations. Our wholly-owned subsidiary Ardmore Shipping (Bermuda) Limited (or *ASBL*) carries out our management functions. Ardmore Shipping Services (Ireland) Limited, a wholly-owned subsidiary incorporated in Ireland, provides the Company's corporate, accounting, fleet administration and operations services. Each of Ardmore Shipping (Asia) Pte. Limited and Ardmore Shipping (Americas) LLC, wholly-owned subsidiaries incorporated in Singapore and Delaware, respectively, performs commercial management and chartering services for the Company.

We commenced business operations in April 2010 with the goal of building an enduring product and chemical tanker company that emphasizes service excellence, innovation, and operational efficiency through our focus on high quality,

## Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

fuel-efficient vessels. We are led by a team of experienced senior managers who have previously held senior management positions with highly regarded public shipping companies and financial institutions.

We are incorporated under the laws of the Republic of The Marshall Islands as Ardmore Shipping Corporation. Our principal executive offices are located at Cumberland House, 1 Victoria Street, 5<sup>th</sup> Floor, Hamilton, HM11 and our phone number is (441) 405-7800. Our website address is [www.ardmoreshipping.com](http://www.ardmoreshipping.com). The information contained in our website is not part of this prospectus.

**Table of Contents**

**RISK FACTORS**

*Before investing in our securities, you should carefully consider all of the information included or incorporated by reference into this prospectus. When evaluating an investment in any of our securities, you should carefully consider the following risk factors together with all other information included in this prospectus, including those risks discussed under the caption *Risk Factors* in our latest Annual Report on Form 20-F filed with the SEC, which are incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and information included in any applicable prospectus supplement.*

*If any of these risks were to occur, our business, financial condition, operating results or cash flows could be materially adversely affected. In that case, the trading price of our securities could decline, we might be unable to pay dividends on shares of our equity securities or interest or principal on our debt securities and you could lose all or part of your investment. In addition to the following risk factors, please read *Tax Considerations* in this prospectus for a more complete discussion of expected material U.S. federal income and non-U.S. tax consequences of owning and disposing of our securities.*

**Risks Inherent in an Investment in our Securities**

***The price of our securities after any offering may be volatile, and you could lose a significant part of your investment.***

The price of our securities may fluctuate due to factors such as:

actual or anticipated fluctuations in our quarterly and annual results and those of other public companies in our industry;

mergers and strategic alliances in the tanker industry;

market conditions in the tanker industry;

general economic or financial market conditions;

changes in government regulation;

the failure of securities analysts to publish research about us, securities analysts making changes in their financial estimates, or shortfalls in our operating results from levels forecast by securities analysts;

announcements concerning us or our competitors of, among other things, significant contracts, acquisitions or capital commitments;

future sales of our securities; and

the general state of the securities markets.

The seaborne transportation industry has been highly unpredictable and volatile. The market for our securities in this industry may be equally volatile. Consequently, you may not be able to sell the securities at prices equal to or greater than those paid by you in any offering.

***We may issue additional shares of our securities without your approval, which would dilute your ownership interests and may depress the market price of the securities.***

We may issue additional shares of our securities of equal or senior rank to your securities, without shareholder approval, in a number of circumstances.

The issuance by us of additional securities of equal or senior rank to your securities may have the following effects:

our existing shareholders' proportionate ownership interest in us may decrease;

---

**Table of Contents**

the amount of cash available for dividends or interest payments may decrease;

the relative voting strength of previously outstanding securities may be diminished; and

the market price of our securities may decline.

**Tax Risks**

***U.S. tax authorities could treat us as a passive foreign investment company, which could have adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. holders.***

A foreign corporation will be treated as a passive foreign investment company (or *PFIC*), for U.S. federal income tax purposes if either (1) at least 75% of its gross income for any taxable year consists of passive income or (2) at least 50% of the average value of the corporation's assets produce or are held for the production of passive income. For purposes of these tests, passive income generally includes dividends, interest, and gains from the sale or exchange of investment property and rents and royalties other than rents and royalties which are received from unrelated parties in connection with the active conduct of a trade or business. For purposes of these tests, income derived from the performance of services generally does not constitute passive income. U.S. shareholders of a PFIC are subject to an adverse U.S. federal income tax regime with respect to the income derived by the PFIC, the distributions they receive from the PFIC and the gain, if any, they derive from the sale or other disposition of their shares in the PFIC.

Based upon our operations as described herein, we do not believe that our income from our time charters should be treated as passive income for purposes of determining whether we are a PFIC, and, consequently, the assets that we own and operate in connection with the production of that income should not constitute passive assets. Accordingly, based on our current operations, we do not believe we will be treated as a PFIC with respect to any taxable year.

There is substantial legal authority supporting this position consisting of case law and U.S. Internal Revenue Service (or *IRS*), pronouncements concerning the characterization of income derived from time charters and voyage charters as services income for other tax purposes. However, there is also authority which characterizes time charter income as rental income rather than services income for other tax purposes. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the IRS or a court of law will accept this position, and there is a risk that the IRS or a court of law could determine that we are a PFIC. Moreover, no assurance can be given that we would not constitute a PFIC for any future taxable year if the nature and extent of our operations change.

If the IRS were successful in asserting that we are or have been a PFIC for any taxable year, U.S. shareholders would face adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences. Under the PFIC rules, unless a shareholder makes an election available under the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, (or *the Code*), (which election could itself have adverse consequences for such shareholders, as discussed below under Tax Considerations U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations U.S. Federal Income Taxation of U.S. Holders ), excess distributions and any gain from the disposition of such shareholder's common shares would be allocated ratably over the shareholder's holding period of the common shares and the amounts allocated to the taxable year of the excess distribution or sale or other disposition and to any year before we became a PFIC would be taxed as ordinary income. The amount allocated to each other taxable year would be subject to tax at the highest rate in effect for individuals or corporations, as appropriate, for that taxable year, and an interest charge would be imposed with respect to such tax. Please read Tax Considerations U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations U.S. Federal Income Taxation of U.S. Holders for a more comprehensive discussion of the U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. shareholders if we are treated as a PFIC.



**Table of Contents****USE OF PROCEEDS**

Unless we specify otherwise in any prospectus supplement, we will use the net proceeds from our sale of securities covered by this prospectus for general corporate purposes, which may include, among other things:

paying or refinancing all or a portion of our indebtedness outstanding at the time; and

funding working capital, capital expenditures or acquisitions.

The actual application of proceeds from the sale by us of any particular offering of the securities covered by this prospectus will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to the offering.

We will not receive any of the proceeds from the sale of shares of common stock by the selling shareholder under this prospectus and any related prospectus supplement. Please read *Selling Shareholder*.

**RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES**

The following table sets forth our ratio of earnings to fixed charges for each of the periods presented. No preferred stock dividends were paid during the periods presented.

	<b>Six Months Ended</b>		<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>			
	<b>June 30, 2016</b>	<b>2015</b>	<b>2014</b>	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges <sup>(1)</sup>	2.48	3.03	(2)	(2)	(2)	(2)
Dollar amount of deficiency in earnings to fixed charges			\$ 2,165,772	\$ 6,140,660	\$ 5,025,178	\$ 3,505,704

(1) For purposes of calculating the ratios of consolidated earnings to fixed charges:

earnings consist of pre-tax income from continuing operations prepared under U.S. GAAP, plus fixed charges, net of capitalized interest; and

fixed charges represent interest incurred (whether expensed or capitalized) and amortization of deferred financing costs (whether expensed or capitalized) and accretion of discount.

The ratios of earnings to fixed charges are ratios that we are required to present in this prospectus and have been calculated in accordance with Commission rules and regulations. These ratios have no application to our credit and lease facilities and preferred shares and we believe they are not ratios generally used by investors to evaluate our overall operating performance.

(2) Earnings for this period were inadequate to cover fixed charges.



**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK**

The following description is a summary of the material provisions of our capital stock, including the rights, preferences and restrictions attaching to each class of stock. Because the following is a summary, it does not contain all information that you may find useful. For more complete information, you should read our amended and restated articles of incorporation and amended and restated bylaws, which have been filed as exhibits (by incorporation by reference) to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

**Purpose**

Our purpose, as stated in our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation, is to engage in any lawful act or activity for which corporations may now or hereafter be organized under the Business Corporations Act of the Marshall Islands (or the *BCA*). Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws do not impose any limitations on the ownership rights of our shareholders.

**Authorized Capital Stock**

Under our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation, our authorized capital stock consists of 225,000,000 common shares, par value \$0.01 per share, of which 33,489,686 shares are issued and outstanding as of August 25, 2016, and 25,000,000 preferred shares, par value \$0.01 per share, of which no shares are issued and outstanding.

***Common shares***

Each outstanding common share entitles the holder to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of shareholders. Subject to any preferences that may be applicable to any outstanding shares of preferred stock, holders of common shares are entitled to receive ratably all dividends, if any, declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available for dividends. Upon our dissolution or liquidation or the sale of all or substantially all of our assets, after payment in full of all amounts required to be paid to creditors and to the holders of preferred stock having liquidation preferences, if any, the holders of our common shares are entitled to receive pro rata our remaining assets available for distribution. Holders of common shares do not have conversion, redemption or pre-emptive rights to subscribe for any of our securities. The rights, preferences and privileges of holders of common shares are subject to the rights of the holders of any shares of our preferred stock, which we may issue in the future.

***Preferred shares***

Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation authorize our board of directors to establish one or more series of preferred stock and to determine, with respect to any series of preferred stock, the terms and rights of that series, including:

the designation of the series;

the number of shares of the series;

the preferences and relative, participating, option or other special rights, if any, and any qualifications, limitations or restrictions of such series; and

the voting rights, if any, of the holders of the series.

**Registrar and Transfer Agent**

The registrar and transfer agent for our common shares is Computershare Trust Company N.A.

**Listing**

Our common stock is currently listed on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol ASC.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Directors**

Our directors are elected by a plurality of the votes cast by shareholders entitled to vote. There is no provision for cumulative voting.

Our Amended and Restated Bylaws require our board of directors to consist of at least one member. Our board of directors currently consists of eight members. Our Amended and Restated Bylaws may be amended by the vote of a majority of our entire board of directors.

Directors are elected annually on a staggered basis, and each generally shall serve for a three-year term and until his or her successor shall have been duly elected and qualified, except in the event of his or her death, resignation, removal, or the earlier termination of his or her term of office.

### **Shareholder Meetings**

Under our Amended and Restated Bylaws, annual meetings of shareholders will be held at a time and place selected by our board of directors. The meetings may be held in or outside the Marshall Islands. Special meetings may be called at any time by a majority of our board of directors, the chairman of our board of directors or the president of the Company. Our board of directors may set a record date between 15 and 60 days before the date of any meeting to determine the shareholders that will be eligible to receive notice and vote at the meeting. One or more shareholders representing at least one-third of the total voting rights of our total issued and outstanding shares present in person or by proxy at a shareholder meeting shall constitute a quorum for the purposes of the meeting.

### **Dissenters Rights of Appraisal and Payment**

Under the BCA, our shareholders have the right to dissent from various corporate actions, including any merger or consolidation and the sale of all or substantially all of our assets not made in the usual course of our business, and receive payment of the fair value of their shares, subject to exceptions. For example, the right of a dissenting shareholder to receive payment of the fair value of his or her shares is not available for the shares of any class or series of shares, which, at the record date fixed to determine the shareholders entitled to receive notice of and vote at the meeting of shareholders to act upon the agreement of merger or consolidation, were either (1) listed on a securities exchange or admitted for trading on an interdealer quotation system or (2) held of record by more than 2,000 holders. In the event of any further amendment of our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation, a shareholder also has the right to dissent and receive payment for his or her shares if the amendment alters certain rights in respect of those shares. The dissenting shareholder must follow the procedures set forth in the BCA to receive payment. In the event that we and any dissenting shareholder fail to agree on a price for the shares, the BCA procedures involve, among other things, the institution of proceedings in the high court of the Marshall Islands or in any appropriate court in any jurisdiction in which our shares are primarily traded on a local or national securities exchange.

### **Shareholders Derivative Actions**

Under the BCA, any of our shareholders may bring an action in our name to procure a judgment in our favor, also known as a derivative action, provided that the shareholder bringing the action is a holder of common shares both at the time the derivative action is commenced and at the time of the transaction to which the action relates.

### **Limitations on Liability and Indemnification of Officers and Directors**

The BCA authorizes corporations to limit the personal liability of directors and officers to corporations and their shareholders for monetary damages for breaches of directors' fiduciary duties. Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws include a provision that eliminates the personal liability of directors for monetary damages for actions taken as a director to the fullest extent permitted by law.

## **Table of Contents**

Our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that we must indemnify our directors and officers to the fullest extent authorized by law. We are also expressly authorized to advance certain expenses (including attorney's fees and disbursements and court costs) to our directors and officers and carry directors' and officers' insurance providing indemnification for our directors, officers and certain employees for some liabilities. We believe that these indemnification provisions and this insurance are useful to attract and retain qualified directors and executive officers.

The limitation of liability and indemnification provisions in our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws may discourage shareholders from bringing a lawsuit against directors or officers for breach of their fiduciary duty. These provisions may also have the effect of reducing the likelihood of derivative litigation against directors and officers, even though such an action, if successful, might otherwise benefit us and our shareholders. In addition, your investment may be adversely affected to the extent we pay the costs of settlement and damage awards against directors and officers pursuant to these indemnification provisions.

There is currently no pending material litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors, officers or employees for which indemnification is sought.

## **Anti-takeover Effect of Certain Provisions of Our Organizational Documents**

Several provisions of our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and Amended and Restated Bylaws, which are summarized below, may have anti-takeover effects. These provisions are intended to avoid costly takeover battles, lessen our vulnerability to a hostile change of control and enhance the ability of our board of directors to maximize shareholder value in connection with any unsolicited offer to acquire us. However, these anti-takeover provisions, which are summarized below, could also discourage, delay or prevent (a) the merger or acquisition of us by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise that a shareholder may consider in its best interest or (b) the removal of incumbent officers and directors.

### ***Blank check preferred stock***

Under the terms of our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation, our board of directors has authority, without any further vote or action by our shareholders, to issue up to 25 million shares of blank check preferred stock. Our board of directors may issue shares of preferred stock on terms calculated to discourage, delay or prevent a change of control of us or the removal of our management.

### ***Election and removal of directors***

Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation prohibit cumulative voting in the election of directors. Our Amended and Restated Bylaws require parties other than the board of directors to give advance written notice of nominations for the election of directors. Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation also provide that our directors may be removed only for cause upon the affirmative vote of not less than two-thirds of the outstanding shares of our capital stock entitled to vote for those directors. These provisions may discourage, delay or prevent the removal of incumbent officers and directors.

### ***Classified board of directors***

As described above, our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation provide for the division of our board of directors into three classes of directors, with each class as nearly equal in number as possible, serving staggered three-year terms. Accordingly, approximately one-third of our board of directors generally will be elected each year. This classified board provision could discourage a third party from making a tender offer for our shares or attempting

to obtain control of us. It could also delay shareholders who do not agree with the policies of our board of directors from removing a majority of our board of directors for two years.

## **Table of Contents**

### ***Limited actions by shareholders***

Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that any action required or permitted to be taken by our shareholders must be effected at an annual or special meeting of shareholders or by the unanimous written consent of our shareholders. Our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation and our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that, unless otherwise prescribed by law, only a majority of our board of directors, the chairman of our board of directors or the president of the Company may call special meetings of our shareholders and the business transacted at the special meeting is limited to the purposes stated in the notice. Accordingly, a shareholder may be prevented from calling a special meeting for shareholder consideration of a proposal over the opposition of our board of directors and shareholder consideration of a proposal may be delayed until the next annual meeting.

### ***Advance notice requirements for shareholder proposals and director nominations***

Our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that shareholders seeking to nominate candidates for election as directors or to bring business before an annual meeting of shareholders must provide timely notice of their proposal in writing to the corporate secretary. Generally, to be timely, a shareholder's notice must be received at our principal executive offices not less than 120 days nor more than 150 days prior to the one-year anniversary of the immediately preceding annual meeting of shareholders. Our Amended and Restated Bylaws also specify requirements as to the form and content of a shareholder's notice. These provisions may impede shareholders' ability to bring matters before an annual meeting of shareholders or make nominations for directors at an annual meeting of shareholders.

### ***Business combinations***

Although the BCA does not contain specific provisions regarding business combinations between companies organized under Marshall Islands law and interested shareholders, we have included these provisions in our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation. Specifically, our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation prohibit us from engaging in a business combination with certain persons for three years following the date the person becomes an interested shareholder. Interested shareholders generally include:

any person who is the beneficial owner of 15% or more of our outstanding voting stock; or

any person who is our affiliate or associate and who held 15% or more of our outstanding voting stock at any time within three years before the date on which the person's status as an interested shareholder is determined, and the affiliates and associates of such person.

Subject to certain exceptions, a business combination includes, among other things:

certain mergers or consolidations of us or any direct or indirect majority-owned subsidiary of ours;

any sale, lease, exchange, mortgage, pledge, transfer or other disposition of our assets or of any subsidiary of ours having an aggregate market value equal to 10% or more of either the aggregate market value of all of our assets, determined on a combined basis, or the aggregate value of all of our outstanding stock;

certain transactions that result in the issuance or transfer by us of any stock of ours to the interested shareholder;

any transaction involving us or any of our subsidiaries that has the effect of increasing the proportionate share of any class or series of stock, or securities convertible into any class or series of stock, of ours or any such subsidiary that is owned directly or indirectly by the interested shareholder or any affiliate or associate of the interested shareholder; and



**Table of Contents**

any receipt by the interested shareholder of the benefit directly or indirectly (except proportionately as a shareholder) of any loans, advances, guarantees, pledges or other financial benefits provided by or through us.

These provisions of our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation do not apply to a business combination if:

before a person became an interested shareholder, our board of directors approved either the business combination or the transaction in which the shareholder became an interested shareholder;

upon consummation of the transaction which resulted in the shareholder becoming an interested shareholder, the interested shareholder owned at least 85% of our voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, other than certain excluded shares;

at or following the transaction in which the person became an interested shareholder, the business combination is approved by our board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of shareholders, and not by written consent, by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least two-thirds of our outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interest shareholder;

the shareholder was or became an interested shareholder prior to the closing of our initial public offering;

a shareholder became an interested shareholder inadvertently and (i) as soon as practicable divested itself of ownership of sufficient shares so that the shareholder ceased to be an interested shareholder; and (ii) would not, at any time within the three-year period immediately prior to a business combination between us and such shareholder, have been an interested shareholder but for the inadvertent acquisition of ownership; or

the business combination is proposed prior to the consummation or abandonment of and subsequent to the earlier of the public announcement or the notice required under our Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation which (i) constitutes one of the transactions described in the following sentence; (ii) is with or by a person who either was not an interested shareholder during the previous three years or who became an interested shareholder with the approval of the board; and (iii) is approved or not opposed by a majority of the members of the board of directors then in office (but not less than one) who were directors prior to any person becoming an interested shareholder during the previous three years or were recommended for election or elected to succeed such directors by a majority of such directors. The proposed transactions referred to in the preceding sentence are limited to:

- (i) a merger or consolidation of us (except for a merger in respect of which, pursuant to the BCA, no vote of our shareholders is required);
- (ii) a sale, lease, exchange, mortgage, pledge, transfer or other disposition (in one transaction or a series of transactions), whether as part of a dissolution or otherwise, of assets of us or of any direct or indirect

majority-owned subsidiary of ours (other than to any direct or indirect wholly-owned subsidiary or to us) having an aggregate market value equal to 50% or more of either the aggregate market value of all of our assets determined on a consolidated basis or the aggregate market value of all the outstanding shares; or

(iii) a proposed tender or exchange offer for 50% or more of our outstanding voting stock.

**Registration Rights Agreement**

On June 13, 2016, we entered into a registration rights agreement with the selling shareholder named herein, pursuant to which we have agreed to register for resale 1,277,250 of our common shares purchased by the selling shareholder in our follow-on public offering of 7,500,000 common shares. The common shares being registered for the selling shareholder under the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part include the 1,277,250 common shares that we agreed to register pursuant to the registration rights agreement.

Table of Contents**MARSHALL ISLANDS COMPANY CONSIDERATIONS**

Our corporate affairs are governed by our Articles of Incorporation and Bylaws and by the BCA. The provisions of the BCA resemble provisions of the corporation laws of a number of states in the United States. While the BCA also provides that it is to be interpreted according to the laws of the State of Delaware and other states with substantially similar legislative provisions, there have been few, if any, court cases interpreting the BCA in the Marshall Islands and we cannot predict whether Marshall Islands courts would reach the same conclusions as courts in the United States. As a result, you may have more difficulty protecting your interests in the face of actions by the management, directors or controlling shareholders than would shareholders of a corporation incorporated in a U.S. jurisdiction which has developed a substantial body of case law. The following table provides a comparison between the statutory provisions of the BCA and the Delaware General Corporation Law relating to shareholders' rights.

<b>Marshall Islands</b>	<b>Delaware</b>
<b>Shareholder Meetings</b>	
Held at a time and place as designated in the bylaws.	May be held at such time or place as designated in the certificate of incorporation or the bylaws, or if not so designated, as determined by the board of directors.
Special meetings of the shareholders may be called by the board of directors or by such person or persons as may be authorized by the articles of incorporation or by the bylaws.	Special meetings of the shareholders may be called by the board of directors or by such person or persons as may be authorized by the certificate of incorporation or by the bylaws.
May be held within or without the Marshall Islands.	May be held within or without Delaware.
Notice:	Notice:
Whenever shareholders are required to take any action at a meeting, written notice of the meeting shall be given which shall state the place, date and hour of the meeting and, unless it is an annual meeting, indicate that it is being issued by or at the direction of the person calling the meeting. Notice of a special meeting shall also state the purpose for which the meeting is called.	Whenever shareholders are required to take any action at a meeting, a written notice of the meeting shall be given which shall state the place, if any, date and hour of the meeting, and the means of remote communication, if any.
A copy of the notice of any meeting shall be given personally or sent by mail not less than 15 nor more than 60 days before the meeting.	Written notice shall be given not less than 10 nor more than 60 days before the meeting.

**Shareholders' Voting Rights**

Any action required to be taken by a meeting of shareholders may be taken without meeting if consent is in writing and is signed by all the shareholders entitled to vote.

Any action required to be taken at a meeting of shareholders may be taken without a meeting if a consent for such action is in writing and is signed by shareholders having not fewer than the minimum number of votes that would be necessary to authorize or take such action at a meeting at which all shares entitled to vote thereon were present and voted.

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

Any person authorized to vote may authorize another person or persons to act for him by proxy.

Any person authorized to vote may authorize another person or persons to act for him by proxy.

**Table of Contents**

**Marshall Islands**

**Delaware**

**Shareholders Voting Rights**

Unless otherwise provided in the articles of incorporation or bylaws, a majority of shares entitled to vote constitutes a quorum. In no event shall a quorum consist of fewer than one-third of the shares entitled to vote at a meeting.

For stock corporations, the certificate of incorporation or bylaws may specify the number of shares required to constitute a quorum but in no event shall a quorum consist of less than one-third of shares entitled to vote at a meeting. In the absence of such specifications, a majority of shares entitled to vote shall constitute a quorum.

When a quorum is once present to organize a meeting, it is not broken by the subsequent withdrawal of any shareholders.

When a quorum is once present to organize a meeting, it is not broken by the subsequent withdrawal of any shareholders.

The articles of incorporation may provide for cumulative voting in the election of directors.

The certificate of incorporation may provide for cumulative voting in the election of directors.

**Merger or Consolidation**

Any two or more domestic corporations may merge into a single corporation if approved by the board and if authorized by a majority vote of the holders of outstanding shares at a shareholder meeting.

Any two or more corporations existing under the laws of the state may merge into a single corporation pursuant to a board resolution and upon the majority vote by shareholders of each constituent corporation at an annual or special meeting.

Any sale, lease, exchange or other disposition of all or substantially all the assets of a corporation, if not made in the corporation's usual or regular course of business, once approved by the board, shall be authorized by the affirmative vote of two-thirds of the shares of those entitled to vote at a shareholder meeting.

Every corporation may at any meeting of the board sell, lease or exchange all or substantially all of its property and assets as its board deems expedient and for the best interests of the corporation when so authorized by a resolution adopted by the holders of a majority of the outstanding stock of the corporation entitled to vote.

Any domestic corporation owning at least 90% of the outstanding shares of each class of another domestic corporation may merge such other corporation into itself without the authorization of the shareholders of any corporation.

Any corporation owning at least 90% of the outstanding shares of each class of another corporation may merge the other corporation into itself and assume all of its obligations without the vote or consent of shareholders; however, in case the parent corporation is not the surviving corporation, the proposed merger shall be approved by a majority of the outstanding stock of the parent corporation entitled to vote at a duly called shareholder meeting.

Any mortgage, pledge of or creation of a security interest in all or any part of the corporate property may be authorized without the vote or consent of the shareholders, unless otherwise provided for in the articles of incorporation.

Any mortgage or pledge of a corporation's property and assets may be authorized without the vote or consent of shareholders, except to the extent that the certificate of incorporation otherwise provides.

**Directors**

The board of directors must consist of at least one member.

The board of directors must consist of at least one member.

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

The number of board members may be changed by an amendment to the bylaws, by the shareholders, or by action of the board under the specific provisions of a bylaw.

The number of board members shall be fixed by, or in a manner provided by, the bylaws, unless the certificate of incorporation fixes the number of directors, in which case a change in the number shall be made only by an amendment to the certificate of incorporation.

**Table of Contents**

**Marshall Islands**

**Delaware**

**Directors**

If the board is authorized to change the number of directors, it can only do so by a majority of the entire board and so long as no decrease in the number shall shorten the term of any incumbent director.

**Removal:**

Any or all of the directors may be removed for cause by vote of the shareholders.

If the articles of incorporation or the bylaws so provide, any or all of the directors may be removed without cause by vote of the shareholders.

If the number of directors is fixed by the certificate of incorporation, a change in the number shall be made only by an amendment of the certificate.

**Removal:**

Any or all of the directors may be removed, with or without cause, by the holders of a majority of the shares entitled to vote unless the certificate of incorporation otherwise provides.

In the case of a classified board, shareholders may effect removal of any or all directors only for cause.

**Dissenters Rights of Appraisal**

Shareholders have a right to dissent from any plan of merger, consolidation or sale of all or substantially all assets not made in the usual course of business, and receive payment of the fair value of their shares. However, the right of a dissenting shareholder under the BCA to receive payment of the appraised fair value of his shares is not available for the shares of any class or series of stock, which shares or depository receipts in respect thereof, at the Record Date fixed to determine the shareholders entitled to receive notice of and to vote at the meeting of the shareholders to act upon the agreement of merger or consolidation, were either (i) listed on a securities exchange or admitted for trading on an interdealer quotation system or (ii) held of record by more than 2,000 holders. The right of a dissenting shareholder to receive payment of the fair value of his or her shares shall not be available for any shares of stock of the constituent corporation surviving a merger if the merger did not require for its approval the vote of the shareholders of the surviving corporation.

A holder of any adversely affected shares who does not vote on or consent in writing to an amendment to the articles of incorporation has the right to dissent and to receive payment for such shares if the amendment:

Alters or abolishes any preferential right of any outstanding shares having preference; or

Creates, alters, or abolishes any provision or right in respect to the redemption of any outstanding shares; or

Appraisal rights shall be available for the shares of any class or series of stock of a corporation in a merger or consolidation, subject to limited exceptions, such as a merger or consolidation of corporations listed on a national securities exchange in which listed stock is offered for consideration is (i) listed on a national securities exchange or (ii) held of record by more than 2,000 holders.

Alters or abolishes any preemptive right of such holder to acquire shares or other securities; or



**Table of Contents**

**Marshall Islands**

**Delaware**

**Dissenters Rights of Appraisal**

Excludes or limits the right of such holder to vote on any matter, except as such right may be limited by the voting rights given to new shares then being authorized of any existing or new class.

**Shareholder s Derivative Actions**

An action may be brought in the right of a corporation to procure a judgment in its favor, by a holder of shares or of voting trust certificates or of a beneficial interest in such shares or certificates. It shall be made to appear that the plaintiff is such a holder at the time of bringing the action and that he was such a holder at the time of the transaction of which he complains, or that his shares or his interest therein devolved upon him by operation of law.

A complaint shall set forth with particularity the efforts of the plaintiff to secure the initiation of such action by the board or the reasons for not making such effort.

Such action shall not be discontinued, compromised or settled, without the approval of the High Court of the Republic of The Marshall Islands.

Reasonable expenses including attorney s fees may be awarded if the action is successful.

A corporation may require a plaintiff bringing a derivative suit to give security for reasonable expenses if the plaintiff owns less than 5% of any class of stock and the shares have a value of less than \$50,000.

In any derivative suit instituted by a shareholder of a corporation, it shall be averred in the complaint that the plaintiff was a shareholder of the corporation at the time of the transaction of which he complains or that such shareholder s stock thereafter devolved upon such shareholder by operation of law.

Other requirements regarding derivative suits have been created by judicial decision, including that a shareholder may not bring a derivative suit unless he or she first demands that the corporation sue on its own behalf and that demand is refused (unless it is shown that such demand would have been futile).

**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES**

The following summary of the terms of the debt securities describes general terms that apply to the debt securities. The debt securities offered pursuant to this prospectus will be either senior debt or subordinated debt. The particular terms of any debt securities will be described more specifically in each prospectus supplement relating to those debt securities. Where any provision in an accompanying prospectus supplement is inconsistent with any provision in this summary, the prospectus supplement will control.

Senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities will be issued under either of two debt indentures summarized below. Where we make no distinction in our summary between senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities, the applicable information refers to any debt securities. Since this is only a summary, it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. A form of senior debt indenture relating to senior debt securities and a form of subordinated debt indenture relating to subordinated debt securities are exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We encourage you to read those documents.

**General**

The indentures do not limit the aggregate principal amount of debt securities we may issue and provide that we may issue debt securities thereunder from time to time in one or more series. The indentures do not limit the amount of other indebtedness or debt securities, other than certain secured indebtedness as described below, which we may issue. Under the indentures, the terms of the debt securities of any series may differ and we, without the consent of the holders of the debt securities of any series, may reopen a previous series of debt securities and issue additional debt securities of the series or establish additional terms of the series.

Unless otherwise provided in a prospectus supplement, the senior debt securities will be our unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured and senior indebtedness, and the subordinated debt securities will be unsecured obligations of ours and, as set forth below under Subordinated Debt Securities, will be subordinated in right of payment to all of our senior indebtedness.

Because some of our assets are held in subsidiaries, our rights and the rights of our creditors (including the holders of debt securities) and stockholders to participate in any distribution of assets of any subsidiary upon the subsidiary's liquidation or reorganization or otherwise may be subject to the prior claims of the subsidiary's creditors, except to the extent that we may be a creditor with recognized claims against the subsidiary.

You should refer to the prospectus supplement that accompanies this prospectus for a description of the specific series of debt securities we are offering by that prospectus supplement. The terms may include:

the title and specific designation of the debt securities, including whether they are senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities;

any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities or the series of which they are a part;

whether the debt securities are to be issuable as registered securities, as bearer securities or alternatively as bearer securities and registered securities, and if as bearer securities, whether interest on any portion of a

bearer security in global form will be paid to any clearing organizations;

the currency or currencies, or composite currencies, in which the debt securities will be denominated and in which we will make payments on the debt securities;

the date or dates on which we must pay principal;

the rate or rates at which the debt securities will bear interest or the manner in which interest will be determined, if any interest is payable;

the date or dates from which any interest will accrue, the date or dates on which we must pay interest and the record date for determining who is entitled to any interest payment;

**Table of Contents**

the place or places where we must pay the debt securities and where any debt securities issued in registered form may be sent for transfer or exchange;

the terms and conditions on which we may, or may be required to, redeem the debt securities;

the terms and conditions of any sinking fund;

if other than denominations of \$1,000, the denominations in which we may issue the debt securities;

the amount we will pay if the maturity of the debt securities is accelerated;

whether we will issue the debt securities in the form of one or more global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary for the global security or securities;

any addition to or changes in the events of default or covenants that apply to the debt securities;

whether the debt securities will be defeasible; and

any other terms of the debt securities and any other deletions from or modifications or additions to the applicable indenture in respect of the debt securities, including those relating to the subordination of any debt securities.

Unless the accompanying prospectus supplement specifies otherwise, the debt securities will not be listed on any securities exchange.

Unless the accompanying prospectus supplement specifies otherwise, we will issue the debt securities in fully registered form without coupons. If we issue debt securities of any series in bearer form, the accompanying prospectus supplement will describe the special restrictions and considerations, including special offering restrictions and special federal income tax considerations, applicable to those debt securities and to payment on and transfer and exchange of those debt securities. Debt securities issued in bearer form will be transferable by delivery.

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, we will pay principal, premium, interest and additional amounts, if any, on the debt securities at the office or agency we maintain for that purpose (initially the corporate trust office of the trustee). We may pay interest on debt securities issued in registered form by check mailed to the address of the persons entitled to the payments or we may pay by transfer to their U.S. bank accounts. Interest on debt securities issued in registered form will be payable on any interest payment date to the registered owners of the debt securities at the close of business on the regular record date for the interest payment. We will name in the prospectus supplement all paying agents we initially designate for the debt securities. We may designate additional paying agents, rescind the designation of any paying agent or approve a change in the office through which any paying agent acts, but we must maintain a paying agent in each place where payments on the debt securities are payable.

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, the debt securities may be presented for transfer (duly endorsed or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer, if we or the security registrar so requires) or exchanged for other debt securities of the same series (containing identical terms and provisions, in any authorized denominations, and in the same aggregate principal amount) at the office or agency we maintain for that purpose (initially the corporate trust office of the trustee). There will be no service charge for any transfer or exchange, but we may require payment sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge or expenses payable in connection with the transfer or exchange. We will not be required to:

issue, register the transfer of, or exchange, debt securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any such debt securities and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing; or

register the transfer of or exchange any debt security selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any debt security being redeemed in part.

## **Table of Contents**

We shall appoint the trustee as security registrar. Any transfer agent (in addition to the security registrar) we initially designate for any debt securities will be named in the related prospectus supplement. We may designate additional transfer agents, rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, but we must maintain a transfer agent in each place where any payments on the debt securities are payable.

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, we will issue the debt securities only in fully registered form, without coupons, in minimum denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000. The debt securities may be represented in whole or in part by one or more global debt securities. Each global security will be registered in the name of a depository or its nominee and the global security will bear a legend regarding the restrictions on exchanges and registration of transfer. Interests in a global security will be shown on records maintained by the depository and its participants, and transfers of those interests will be made as described below. Provisions relating to the use of global securities are more fully described below in the section entitled *Use of Global Securities*.

We may issue the debt securities as original issue discount securities (bearing no interest or bearing interest at a rate which at the time of issuance is below market rates) to be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. We will describe certain special U.S. federal income tax and other considerations applicable to any debt securities that are issued as original issue discount securities in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

If the purchase price of any debt securities is payable in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, or if any debt securities are denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, or if any payments on the debt securities are payable in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, we will describe the restrictions, elections, certain U.S. federal income tax considerations, specific terms and other information about the debt securities and the foreign currency or currency units in the prospectus supplement.

We will comply with Section 14(e) under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (or the *Exchange Act*), and any other tender offer rules under the Exchange Act that may then be applicable, in connection with any obligation to purchase debt securities at the option of the holders. Any such obligation applicable to a series of debt securities will be described in the related prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise described in a prospectus supplement relating to any debt securities, the indentures do not limit our ability to incur debt or give holders of debt securities protection in the event of a sudden and significant decline in our credit quality or a takeover, recapitalization or highly leveraged or similar transaction involving us. Accordingly, we could in the future enter into transactions that could increase the amount of indebtedness outstanding at that time or otherwise affect our capital structure or credit rating. You should refer to the prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities for information regarding any changes in the events of default described below or covenants contained in the indentures, including any addition of a covenant or other provisions providing event risk or similar protection.

## **Subordinated Debt Securities**

Unless otherwise provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the following provisions will apply for subordinated debt securities.

Before we pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on, the subordinated debt securities, we must be current and not in default on payment in full of all of our senior indebtedness. Senior indebtedness includes all of our indebtedness as described below, except for:

obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property;

conditional sale obligations;

**Table of Contents**

obligations arising under any title retention agreements;

indebtedness relating to the applicable subordinated debt securities;

indebtedness owed to one of our subsidiaries; and

indebtedness that, by its terms, is subordinate in right of payment to or equal with the applicable subordinated debt securities.

Generally, indebtedness means:

the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on indebtedness for money borrowed;

the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on indebtedness evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments;

obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property, all conditional sale obligations and all obligations arising under any title retention agreements;

obligations for the reimbursement of any obligor on any letter of credit, banker's acceptance or similar credit transaction (other than obligations with respect to certain letters of credit securing obligations entered into in the ordinary course of business);

obligations of the type referred to in the bullet points above assumed for another party and dividends of another party for the payment of which, in either case, one is responsible or liable as obligor, guarantor or otherwise; and

obligations assumed of the types referred to in the bullet points above for another party secured by any lien on any of one's property or assets.

Indebtedness does not include amounts owed pursuant to trade accounts arising in the ordinary course of business.

Generally, we may not pay the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the subordinated debt securities if, at the time of payment (or immediately after giving effect to such payment):

there exists under any senior indebtedness, or any agreement under which any senior indebtedness is issued, any default, which default results in the full amount of the senior indebtedness being declared due and payable; or



the trustee has received written notice from a holder of senior indebtedness stating that there exists under the senior indebtedness, or any agreement under which the senior indebtedness is issued, a default, which default permits the holders of the senior indebtedness to declare the full amount of the senior indebtedness due and payable;

unless, among other things, in either case:

the default has been cured or waived; or

full payment of amounts then due for principal and interest and of all other obligations then due on all senior indebtedness has been made or duly provided for under the terms of any instrument governing senior indebtedness.

Limited subordination periods apply in the event of non-payment defaults relating to senior indebtedness in situations where there has not been an acceleration of senior indebtedness.

A failure to make any payment on the subordinated debt securities as a result of the foregoing provisions will not affect our obligations to the holders of the subordinated debt securities to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities as and when such payment obligations become due.

## **Table of Contents**

The holders of senior indebtedness will be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on senior indebtedness, or provisions will be made for such payment, before the holders of the subordinated debt securities are entitled to receive any payment or distribution of any kind relating to the subordinated debt securities or on account of any purchase or other acquisition of the subordinated debt securities by us or any of our subsidiaries, in the event of:

insolvency or bankruptcy case or proceeding, or any receivership, liquidation, reorganization or other similar case, relating to us or our assets;

any liquidation, dissolution or other winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary and whether or not involving insolvency or bankruptcy; or

any assignment for the benefit of our creditors or any other marshalling of our assets and liabilities.

In addition, the rights of the holders of the subordinated debt securities will be subrogated to the rights of the holders of senior indebtedness to receive payments and distributions of cash, property and securities applicable to the senior indebtedness until the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities are paid in full.

Because of these subordination provisions, our creditors who hold senior indebtedness or other unsubordinated indebtedness may recover a greater percentage of the debt owed to them than the holders of the subordinated debt securities.

The indenture covering subordinated debt securities will not limit the aggregate amount of senior indebtedness that we may issue. If this prospectus is being delivered in connection with the offering of a series of subordinated debt securities, the accompanying prospectus supplement or the information incorporated in this prospectus by reference will set forth the approximate amount of senior debt outstanding as of a recent date.

## **Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets**

We may not consolidate with or merge into any other person or convey or transfer or lease our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any person unless:

if we consolidate with or merge into another corporation or convey or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any person, the successor is organized under the laws of the United States, or any state thereof, the District of Columbia or the Republic of The Marshall Islands and assumes our obligations under the debt securities;

immediately after the transaction, no event of default occurs and continues; and

we meet certain other conditions specified in the indentures.

## **Modification and Waiver**

We and the trustee may modify and amend the indentures without the consent of the holders of the outstanding debt securities of each affected series, in order to, among other things:

evidence the succession of another corporation to us and the assumption of all of our obligations under the debt securities, any related coupons and our covenants by a successor;

add to our covenants for the benefit of holders of debt securities or surrender any of our rights or powers;

add additional events of default for any series;

add, change or eliminate any provision affecting debt securities that are not yet issued;

**Table of Contents**

secure certain debt securities;

establish the form or terms of debt securities not yet issued;

make provisions with respect to conversion or exchange rights of holders of debt securities;

evidence and provide for successor trustees; or

correct or supplement any inconsistent provisions, cure any ambiguity or mistake, or add any other provisions, on the condition that this action does not adversely affect the interests of any holder of debt securities of any series issued under the indentures in any material respect.

In addition, we and the trustee may modify and amend the indentures with the consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each affected series. However, without the consent of each holder, we cannot modify or amend the indentures in a way that would:

change the stated maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal or interest on, any debt security;

reduce the principal or interest on any debt security;

change the place or currency of payment of principal or interest on any debt security;

impair the right to sue to enforce any payment on any debt security after it is due; or

reduce the percentage in principal amount of outstanding debt securities necessary to modify or amend the indentures, to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indentures or to waive certain defaults.

The holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of outstanding debt securities may waive our compliance with certain restrictive covenants of the indentures. The holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series may waive any past default under the indentures with respect to outstanding debt securities of that series, which will be binding on all holders of debt securities of that series, except a default in the payment of principal or interest on any debt security of that series or in respect of a provision of the indentures that cannot be modified or amended without each holder's consent.

**Events of Default**

Each of the following will be an event of default:

default for 30 days in the payment of any interest;

default in the payment of principal;

default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment;

default in the performance of any other covenant in the indentures for 90 days after written notice; and

certain events in bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization.

We are required to furnish the trustee annually a statement as to our fulfillment of our obligations under the indentures. The trustee may withhold notice of any default to the holders of debt securities of any series (except for a default on principal or interest payments on debt securities of that series) if it considers it in the interest of the holders to do so.

If an event of default occurs and continues, either the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series in default may declare the principal amount immediately due and payable by written notice to us (and to the trustee if given by the holders). Upon any such declaration, the principal amount will become immediately due and payable. However, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul the acceleration.

## **Table of Contents**

Except for certain duties in case of an event of default, the trustee is not required to exercise any of its rights or powers at the request or direction of any of the holders, unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable security or indemnity. If the holders provide this security or indemnity, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of a series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any trust or powers conferred on the trustee with respect to the debt securities of that series.

No holder of a debt security may bring any lawsuit or other proceeding with respect to the indentures or for any remedy under the indentures, unless:

the holder first gives the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default;

the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series in default give the trustee a written request to bring the proceeding and offer the trustee reasonable security or indemnity; and

the trustee fails to institute the proceeding within 60 days of the written request and has not received from holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series in default a direction inconsistent with that request.

However, the holder of any debt security has the absolute right to receive payment of the principal of and any interest on the debt security on or after the stated due dates and to take any action to enforce any such payment.

## **Discharge, Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

We may discharge certain obligations to holders of any series of debt securities that have not already been delivered to the trustee for cancellation and that either have become due and payable or will become due and payable within one year (or scheduled for redemption within one year) by depositing with the trustee, in trust, funds in U.S. dollars or in the foreign currency in which such debt securities are payable in an amount sufficient to pay the principal and any premium, interest and additional amounts on such debt securities to the date of deposit (if the debt securities have become due and payable) or to the maturity date, as the case may be.

Unless a prospectus supplement states that the following provisions do not apply to the debt securities of that series, we may elect either:

to defease and be discharged from any and all obligations with respect to such debt securities (except for, among other things, the obligation to pay additional amounts, if any, upon the occurrence of certain events of taxation, assessment or governmental charge with respect to payments on the debt securities and other obligations to register the transfer or exchange of such debt securities, to replace temporary or mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen debt securities, to maintain an office or agency with respect to such debt securities and to hold moneys for payment in trust), such an action a defeasance ; or

to be released from our obligations under the applicable indenture as may be further described in any prospectus supplement, and our failure to comply with these obligations will not constitute an event of default with respect to such debt securities, such an action a covenant defeasance.

Defeasance or covenant defeasance is conditioned on our irrevocable deposit with the trustee, in trust, of an amount in cash or government securities, or both, sufficient to pay the principal of, any premium and interest on, and any additional amounts with respect to, the debt securities on the scheduled due dates. Additional conditions to defeasance or covenant defeasance require that:

the applicable defeasance or covenant defeasance does not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, the applicable indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which we are a party or by which we are bound;

**Table of Contents**

no event of default has occurred and continues on the date the trust is established and, with respect to defeasance only, at any time during the period ending on the 123rd day after that date; and

we have delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the holders of such debt securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of the defeasance or covenant defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax for the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if the defeasance or covenant defeasance had not occurred. This opinion, in the case of defeasance, must refer to and be based upon a letter ruling we have received from the Internal Revenue Service, a Revenue Ruling published by the Internal Revenue Service, or a change in applicable U.S. federal income tax law occurring after the date of the indenture.

If we accomplish covenant defeasance on debt securities of certain holders, those holders can still look to us for repayment of their debt securities in the event of any shortfall in the trust deposit. If one of the remaining events of default occurred, such as our bankruptcy, and the debt securities became immediately due and payable, there may be a shortfall. Depending on the event causing the default, such holders may not be able to obtain payment of the shortfall.

In the case of subordinated debt securities, the subordination provisions described under Subordinated Debt Securities above are made subject to the provisions for defeasance and covenant defeasance. In other words, if we accomplish defeasance or covenant defeasance on any subordinated debt securities, such securities would cease to be so subordinated.

**Governing Law**

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by and interpreted under the laws of the State of New York.



**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF CONVERTIBLE DEBT SECURITIES**

The following summary of the terms of the convertible debt securities describes general terms that apply to the convertible debt securities. The convertible debt securities offered pursuant to this prospectus will be either convertible senior debt or convertible subordinated debt. The particular terms of any convertible debt securities will be described more specifically in each prospectus supplement relating to those convertible debt securities. Where any provision in an accompanying prospectus supplement is inconsistent with any provision in this summary, the prospectus supplement will control.

Convertible senior debt securities and convertible subordinated debt securities will be issued under either of two debt indentures summarized below. The indentures are the same as the indentures described above under Description of Debt Securities . Where we make no distinction in our summary between convertible senior debt securities and convertible subordinated debt securities, the applicable information refers to any convertible debt securities. Since this is only a summary, it does not contain all of the information that may be important to you. We may issue convertible debt securities under our senior debt indenture and our subordinated debt indenture, and forms of each of these indentures are exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We encourage you to read those documents.

**General**

The indentures do not limit the aggregate principal amount of convertible debt securities we may issue and provides that we may issue convertible debt securities thereunder from time to time in one or more series. The indentures do not limit the amount of other indebtedness or convertible debt securities, other than certain secured indebtedness as described below, which we or our subsidiaries may issue. Under the indentures, the terms of the convertible debt securities of any series may differ and we, without the consent of the holders of the convertible debt securities of any series, may reopen a previous series of convertible debt securities and issue additional convertible debt securities of the series or establish additional terms of the series.

Unless otherwise provided in a prospectus supplement, the convertible senior debt securities will be our unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured and senior indebtedness, and the convertible subordinated debt securities will be unsecured obligations of ours and, as set forth below under Convertible Subordinated Debt Securities, will be subordinated in right of payment to all of our senior indebtedness.

Because some of our assets are held in subsidiaries, our rights and the rights of our creditors (including the holders of convertible debt securities) and stockholders to participate in any distribution of assets of any subsidiary upon the subsidiary's liquidation or reorganization or otherwise may be subject to the prior claims of the subsidiary's creditors, except to the extent that we may be a creditor with recognized claims against the subsidiary.

You should refer to the prospectus supplement that accompanies this prospectus for a description of the specific series of convertible debt securities we are offering by that prospectus supplement. The terms may include:

the title and specific designation of the convertible debt securities, including whether they are convertible senior debt securities or convertible subordinated debt securities;

any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the convertible debt securities or the series of which they are a part;

whether the convertible debt securities are to be issuable as registered securities, as bearer securities or alternatively as bearer securities and registered securities, and if as bearer securities, whether interest on any portion of a bearer security in global form will be paid to any clearing organizations;

**Table of Contents**

the currency or currencies, or composite currencies, in which the convertible debt securities will be denominated and in which we will make payments on the convertible debt securities;

the date or dates on which we must pay principal;

the rate or rates at which the convertible debt securities will bear interest or the manner in which interest will be determined, if any interest is payable;

the date or dates from which any interest will accrue, the date or dates on which we must pay interest and the record date for determining who is entitled to any interest payment;

the place or places where we must pay the convertible debt securities and where any convertible debt securities issued in registered form may be sent for transfer, conversion or exchange;

the terms and conditions on which we may, or may be required to, redeem the convertible debt securities;

the terms and conditions of any sinking fund;

if other than denominations of \$1,000, the denominations in which we may issue the convertible debt securities;

the terms and conditions upon which conversion of the convertible debt securities may be effected, including the conversion price, the conversion period and other conversion provisions;

the amount we will pay if the maturity of the convertible debt securities is accelerated;

whether we will issue the convertible debt securities in the form of one or more global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary for the global security or securities;

any addition to or changes in the events of default or covenants that apply to the convertible debt securities;

whether the convertible debt securities will be defeasible; and

any other terms of the convertible debt securities and any other deletions from or modifications or additions to the applicable indenture in respect of the convertible debt securities, including those relating to the

subordination of any convertible debt securities.

Unless the accompanying prospectus supplement specifies otherwise, the convertible debt securities will not be listed on any securities exchange.

Unless the accompanying prospectus supplement specifies otherwise, we will issue the convertible debt securities in fully registered form without coupons. If we issue convertible debt securities of any series in bearer form, the accompanying prospectus supplement will describe the special restrictions and considerations, including special offering restrictions and special federal income tax considerations, applicable to those convertible debt securities and to payment on and transfer and exchange of those convertible debt securities. Convertible debt securities issued in bearer form will be transferable by delivery.

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, we will pay principal, premium, interest and additional amounts, if any, on the convertible debt securities at the office or agency we maintain for that purpose (initially the corporate trust office of the trustee). We may pay interest on convertible debt securities issued in registered form by check mailed to the address of the persons entitled to the payments or we may pay by transfer to their U.S. bank accounts. Interest on convertible debt securities issued in registered form will be payable on any interest payment date to the registered owners of the convertible debt securities at the close of business on the regular record date for the interest payment. We will name in the prospectus supplement all paying agents we initially designate for the convertible debt securities. We may designate additional paying agents, rescind the designation of any paying agent or approve a change in the office through which any paying agent acts, but we must maintain a paying agent in each place where payments on the convertible debt securities are payable.

**Table of Contents**

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, the convertible debt securities may be presented for transfer (duly endorsed or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer, if we or the security registrar so requires) or exchanged for other convertible debt securities of the same series (containing identical terms and provisions, in any authorized denominations, and in the same aggregate principal amount) at the office or agency we maintain for that purpose (initially the corporate trust office of the

trustee). There will be no service charge for any transfer or exchange, but we may require payment sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge or expenses payable in connection with the transfer or exchange. We will not be required to:

issue, register the transfer of, or exchange, convertible debt securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any such convertible debt securities and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing; or

register the transfer of or exchange any debt security selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any debt security being redeemed in part.

We shall appoint the trustee as security registrar. Any transfer agent (in addition to the security registrar) we initially designate for any convertible debt securities will be named in the related prospectus supplement. We may designate additional transfer agents, rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, but we must maintain a transfer agent in each place where any payments on the convertible debt securities are payable.

Unless otherwise stated in the prospectus supplement, we will issue the convertible debt securities only in fully registered form, without coupons, in minimum denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000. The convertible debt securities may be represented in whole or in part by one or more global debt securities. Each global security will be registered in the name of a depositary or its nominee and the global security will bear a legend regarding the restrictions on exchanges and registration of transfer. Interests in a global security will be shown on records maintained by the depositary and its participants, and transfers of those interests will be made as described below. Provisions relating to the use of global securities are more fully described below in the section entitled "Use of Global Securities."

We may issue the convertible debt securities as original issue discount securities (bearing no interest or bearing interest at a rate which at the time of issuance is below market rates) to be sold at a substantial discount below their principal amount. We will describe certain special U.S. federal income tax and other considerations applicable to any convertible debt securities that are issued as original issue discount securities in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

If the purchase price of any convertible debt securities is payable in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, or if any convertible debt securities are denominated in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, or if any payments on the convertible debt securities are payable in one or more foreign currencies or currency units, we will describe the restrictions, elections, certain U.S. federal income tax considerations, specific terms and other information about the convertible debt securities and the foreign currency or currency units in the prospectus supplement.

We will comply with Section 14(e) under the Exchange Act, and any other tender offer rules under the Exchange Act that may then be applicable, in connection with any obligation to purchase convertible debt securities at the option of the holders. Any such obligation applicable to a series of convertible debt securities will be described in the related prospectus supplement.

Unless otherwise described in a prospectus supplement relating to any convertible debt securities, the indentures do not limit our ability to incur debt or give holders of convertible debt securities protection in the event of a sudden and significant decline in our credit quality or a takeover, recapitalization or highly leveraged or similar transaction involving us. Accordingly, we could in the future enter into transactions that could increase

## **Table of Contents**

the amount of indebtedness outstanding at that time or otherwise affect our capital structure or credit rating. You should refer to the prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of convertible debt securities for information regarding any changes in the events of default described below or covenants contained in the indentures, including any addition of a covenant or other provisions providing event risk or similar protection.

### **Conversion Rights**

An accompanying prospectus supplement will set forth the terms on which the convertible debt securities of any series are convertible into common stock or other securities. Those terms will address whether conversion is mandatory, at the option of the holder or at our option. The terms may also provide that the number of shares or interests of our common stock or other securities, as the case may be, to be received by the holders of the convertible debt securities will be calculated according to the market price of our common stock or other securities, as the case may be, as of a time stated in the prospectus supplement or otherwise.

### **Convertible Subordinated Debt Securities**

Unless otherwise provided in the accompanying prospectus supplement, the following provisions will apply for convertible subordinated debt securities.

Before we pay the principal of, premium, if any and interest on, the convertible subordinated debt securities, we must be current and not in default on payment in full of all of our senior indebtedness. Senior indebtedness includes all of our indebtedness as described below, except for:

obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property;

conditional sale obligations;

obligations arising under any title retention agreements;

indebtedness relating to the applicable convertible subordinated debt securities;

indebtedness owed to one of our subsidiaries; and

indebtedness that, by its terms, is subordinate in right of payment to or equal with the applicable convertible subordinated debt securities.

Generally, indebtedness means:

the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on indebtedness for money borrowed;

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on indebtedness evidenced by notes, debentures, bonds or other similar instruments;

obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property, all conditional sale obligations and all obligations arising under any title retention agreements;

obligations for the reimbursement of any obligor on any letter of credit, banker's acceptance or similar credit transaction (other than obligations with respect to certain letters of credit securing obligations entered into in the ordinary course of business);

obligations of the type referred to in the bullet points above assumed for another party and dividends of another party for the payment of which, in either case, one is responsible or liable as obligor, guarantor or otherwise; and

obligations assumed of the types referred to in the bullet points above for another party secured by any lien on any of one's property or assets.

Indebtedness does not include amounts owed pursuant to trade accounts arising in the ordinary course of business.



**Table of Contents**

Generally, we may not pay the principal of, premium, if any, or interest on the convertible subordinated debt securities if, at the time of payment (or immediately after giving effect to such payment):

there exists under any senior indebtedness, or any agreement under which any senior indebtedness is issued, any default, which default results in the full amount of the senior indebtedness being declared due and payable; or

the trustee has received written notice from a holder of senior indebtedness stating that there exists under the senior indebtedness, or any agreement under which the senior indebtedness is issued, a default, which default permits the holders of the senior indebtedness to declare the full amount of the senior indebtedness due and payable;

unless, among other things, in either case:

the default has been cured or waived; or

full payment of amounts then due for principal and interest and of all other obligations then due on all senior indebtedness has been made or duly provided for under the terms of any instrument governing senior indebtedness.

Limited subordination periods apply in the event of non-payment defaults relating to senior indebtedness in situations where there has not been an acceleration of senior indebtedness.

A failure to make any payment on the convertible subordinated debt securities as a result of the foregoing provisions will not affect our obligations to the holders of the convertible subordinated debt securities to pay the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the convertible subordinated debt securities as and when such payment obligations become due.

The holders of senior indebtedness will be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due or to become due on senior indebtedness, or provisions will be made for such payment, before the holders of the convertible subordinated debt securities are entitled to receive any payment or distribution of any kind relating to the convertible subordinated debt securities or on account of any purchase or other acquisition of the convertible subordinated debt securities by us or any of our subsidiaries, in the event of:

insolvency or bankruptcy case or proceeding, or any receivership, liquidation, reorganization or other similar case, relating to us or our assets;

any liquidation, dissolution or other winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary and whether or not involving insolvency or bankruptcy; or

any assignment for the benefit of our creditors or any other marshalling of our assets and liabilities. In addition, the rights of the holders of the convertible subordinated debt securities will be subrogated to the rights of the holders of senior indebtedness to receive payments and distributions of cash, property and securities applicable to the senior indebtedness until the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the convertible subordinated debt securities are paid in full.

Because of these subordination provisions, our creditors who hold senior indebtedness or other unsubordinated indebtedness may recover a greater percentage of the debt owed to them than the holders of the convertible subordinated debt securities.

The convertible indenture covering convertible subordinated debt securities will not limit the aggregate amount of senior indebtedness that we may issue. If this prospectus is being delivered in connection with the offering of a series of convertible subordinated debt securities, the accompanying prospectus supplement or the information incorporated in this prospectus by reference will set forth the approximate amount of senior debt outstanding as of a recent date.

**Table of Contents**

**Consolidation, Merger and Sale of Assets**

We may not consolidate with or merge into any other person or convey or transfer or lease our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any person unless:

if we consolidate with or merge into another corporation or convey or transfer our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to any person, the successor is organized under the laws of the United States, or any state thereof, the District of Columbia or the Republic of The Marshall Islands, and assumes our obligations under the convertible debt securities;

immediately after the transaction, no event of default occurs and continues; and

we meet certain other conditions specified in the indentures.

**Modification and Waiver**

We and the trustee may modify and amend the indentures without the consent of the holders of the outstanding convertible debt securities of each affected series, in order to, among other things:

evidence the succession of another corporation to us and the assumption of all of our obligations under the convertible debt securities, any related coupons and our covenants by a successor;

add to our covenants for the benefit of holders of convertible debt securities or surrender any of our rights or powers;

add additional events of default for any series;

add, change or eliminate any provision affecting convertible debt securities that are not yet issued;

secure certain convertible debt securities;

establish the form or terms of convertible debt securities not yet issued;

make provisions with respect to conversion or exchange rights of holders of convertible debt securities;

evidence and provide for successor trustees;

permit payment in respect of convertible debt securities in bearer form in the United States, if allowed without penalty under applicable laws and regulations; or

correct or supplement any inconsistent provisions, cure any ambiguity or mistake, or add any other provisions, on the condition that this action does not adversely affect the interests of any holder of convertible debt securities of any series issued under the indentures in any material respect.

In addition, we and the trustee may modify and amend the indentures with the consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of each affected series. However, without the consent of each holder, we cannot modify or amend the indentures in a way that would:

change the stated maturity of the principal of, or any installment of principal or interest on, any debt security;

reduce the principal or interest on any debt security;

change the place or currency of payment of principal or interest on any debt security;

impair the right to sue to enforce any payment on any debt security after it is due; or

reduce the percentage in principal amount of outstanding convertible debt securities necessary to modify or amend the indentures, to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indentures or to waive certain defaults.

## **Table of Contents**

The holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of outstanding convertible debt securities may waive our compliance with certain restrictive covenants of the indentures. The holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of any series may waive any past default under the indentures with respect to outstanding convertible debt securities of that series, which will be binding on all holders of convertible debt securities of that series, except a default in the payment of principal or interest on any debt security of that series or in respect of a provision of the indentures that cannot be modified or amended without each holder's consent.

## **Events of Default**

Each of the following will be an event of default:

default for 30 days in the payment of any interest;

default in the payment of principal;

default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment;

default in the performance of any other covenant in the indentures for 90 days after written notice; and

certain events in bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization.

We are required to furnish the trustee annually a statement as to our fulfillment of our obligations under the indentures. The trustee may withhold notice of any default to the holders of convertible debt securities of any series (except for a default on principal or interest payments on convertible debt securities of that series) if it considers it in the interest of the holders to do so.

If an event of default occurs and continues, either the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of the series in default may declare the principal amount immediately due and payable by written notice to us (and to the trustee if given by the holders). Upon any such declaration, the principal amount will become immediately due and payable. However, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of that series may, under certain circumstances, rescind and annul the acceleration.

Except for certain duties in case of an event of default, the trustee is not required to exercise any of its rights or powers at the request or direction of any of the holders, unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable security or indemnity. If the holders provide this security or indemnity, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of a series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any trust or powers conferred on the trustee with respect to the convertible debt securities of that series.

No holder of a convertible debt security may bring any lawsuit or other proceeding with respect to the indentures or for any remedy under the indentures, unless:

the holder first gives the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default;

the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of the series in default give the trustee a written request to bring the proceeding and offer the trustee reasonable security or indemnity; and

the trustee fails to institute the proceeding within 60 days of the written request and has not received from holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding convertible debt securities of the series in default a direction inconsistent with that request.

However, the holder of any convertible debt security has the absolute right to receive payment of the principal of and any interest on the convertible debt security on or after the stated due dates and to take any action to enforce any such payment.

**Table of Contents**

**Discharge, Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance**

We may discharge certain obligations to holders of any series of convertible debt securities that have not already been delivered to the trustee for cancellation and that either have become due and payable or will become due and payable within one year (or scheduled for redemption within one year) by depositing with the trustee, in trust, funds in U.S. dollars or in the foreign currency in which such convertible debt securities are payable in an amount sufficient to pay the principal and any premium, interest and additional amounts on such convertible debt securities to the date of deposit (if the convertible debt securities have become due and payable) or to the maturity date, as the case may be.

Unless a prospectus supplement states that the following provisions do not apply to the convertible debt securities of that series, we may elect either:

to defease and be discharged from any and all obligations with respect to such convertible debt securities (except for, among other things, the obligation to pay additional amounts, if any, upon the occurrence of certain events of taxation, assessment or governmental charge with respect to payments on the convertible debt securities and other obligations to provide for the conversion rights of the holders of such convertible debt securities, to register the transfer or exchange of such convertible debt securities, to replace temporary or mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen convertible debt securities, to maintain an office or agency with respect to such convertible debt securities and to hold moneys for payment in trust), such an action a defeasance ; or

to be released from our obligations under the applicable indenture as may be further described in any prospectus supplement, and our failure to comply with these obligations will not constitute an event of default with respect to such convertible debt securities, such an action a covenant defeasance .

Defeasance or covenant defeasance is conditioned on our irrevocable deposit with the trustee, in trust, of an amount in cash or government securities, or both, sufficient to pay the principal of, any premium and interest on, and any additional amounts with respect to, the convertible debt securities on the scheduled due dates. Additional conditions to defeasance or covenant defeasance require that:

the applicable defeasance or covenant defeasance does not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, the applicable indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which we are a party or by which we are bound;

no event of default has occurred and continues on the date the trust is established and, with respect to defeasance only, at any time during the period ending on the 123rd day after that date; and

we have delivered to the trustee an opinion of counsel to the effect that the holders of such convertible debt securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of the defeasance or covenant defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax for the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if the defeasance or covenant defeasance had not occurred. This opinion, in the case of defeasance, must refer to and be based upon a letter ruling we

have received from the Internal Revenue Service, a Revenue Ruling published by the Internal Revenue Service, or a change in applicable U.S. federal income tax law occurring after the date of the indenture. If we accomplish covenant defeasance on convertible debt securities of certain holders, those holders can still look to us for repayment of their convertible debt securities in the event of any shortfall in the trust deposit. If one of the remaining events of default occurred, such as our bankruptcy, and the convertible debt securities became immediately due and payable, there may be a shortfall. Depending on the event causing the default, such holders may not be able to obtain payment of the shortfall.

In the case of convertible subordinated debt securities, the subordination provisions described under Convertible Subordinated Debt Securities above are made subject to the provisions for defeasance and



**Table of Contents**

covenant defeasance. In other words, if we accomplish defeasance or covenant defeasance on any convertible subordinated debt securities, such securities would cease to be so subordinated.

**Governing Law**

The indentures and the convertible debt securities will be governed by and interpreted under the laws of the State of New York.

**Table of Contents**

**USE OF GLOBAL SECURITIES**

The debt securities of any series may be issued in whole or in part in the form of one or more global debt securities that will be deposited with a depositary or its nominee identified in the series prospectus supplement.

The specific terms of the depositary arrangement covering debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to that series. We anticipate that the following provisions or similar provisions will apply to depositary arrangements relating to debt securities, although to the extent the terms of any arrangement differs from those described in this section, the terms of the arrangement shall supersede those in this section as ultimately described in the applicable indenture and related documents.

Upon the issuance of a global security, the depositary for the global security or its nominee will credit, to accounts in its book-entry registration and transfer system, the principal amounts of the debt securities represented by the global security. These accounts will be designated by the underwriters or agents with respect to such debt securities or by us if such debt securities are offered and sold directly by us. Only institutions that have accounts with the depositary or its nominee, and persons who hold beneficial interests through those participants, may own beneficial interests in a global security. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be shown only on, and the transfer of those ownership interests will be effected only through, records maintained by the depositary, its nominee or any such participants. The laws of some states require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form. These laws may prevent you from transferring your beneficial interest in a global security.

As long as the depositary or its nominee is the registered owner of a global security, the depositary or nominee will be considered the sole owner or holder of the debt securities represented by the global security. Except as described below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have debt securities registered in their names and will not be entitled to receive physical delivery of the debt securities in definitive form.

We will make all payments of principal of, any premium and interest on, and any additional amounts with respect to, debt securities issued as global securities to the depositary or its nominee. Neither we nor the trustee, any paying agent or the security registrar assumes any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the depositary's or any participant's records relating to, or for payments made on account of, beneficial interests in a global security.

We expect that the depositary for a series of debt securities or its nominee, upon receipt of any payment with respect to such debt securities, will credit immediately participants' accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interest in the principal amount of the global security for such debt securities as shown on the records of such depositary or its nominee. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in such global security held through such participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in street name, and will be the responsibility of such participants.

The indentures provide that if:

the depositary notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as depositary for a series of debt securities, or if the depositary is no longer legally qualified to serve in that capacity, and we have not appointed a successor depositary within 90 days of written notice;

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

we determine that a series of debt securities will no longer be represented by global securities and we execute and deliver an order to that effect to the trustee; or

an event of default with respect to a series of debt securities occurs and continues;

**Table of Contents**

the global securities for that series will be exchanged for registered debt securities in definitive form. The definitive debt securities will be registered in the name or names the depositary instructs the trustee. We expect that these instructions may be based upon directions the depositary receives from participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in global securities.

**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS**

The following is a general description of the terms of the warrants we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any warrants we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants.

**General**

We may issue warrants to purchase common stock, preferred stock and debt securities or any combination thereof. Such warrants may be issued independently or together with any such securities and may be attached or separate from such securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants we may issue, including the following:

the title of such warrants;

the aggregate number of such warrants;

the price at which such warrants will be issued;

the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the price of such warrants may be payable;

the designation and terms of the securities purchasable upon exercise of such warrants and the number of such securities issuable upon exercise of such warrants;

the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the securities purchasable upon exercise of such warrants may be purchased;

the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right will expire;

whether such warrants will be issued in registered form or bearer form;

if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants which may be exercised at any one time;

if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which such warrants are issued and the number of such warrants issued with each such security;

if applicable, the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;

information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;

if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and

any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

#### **Amendments and Supplements to Warrant Agreement**

We and the warrant agent may amend or supplement the warrant agreement for a series of warrants without the consent of the holders of the warrants issued thereunder to effect changes that are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and that do not materially and adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants.

**Table of Contents**

**DESCRIPTION OF UNITS**

We may issue units composed of any combination of our common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, convertible debt securities or warrants. We will issue each unit so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. As a result, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security. The unit agreement under which a unit is issued may provide that the securities included in the unit may not be held or transferred separately at any time or at any time before a specified date.

The following description is a summary of selected provisions relating to units that we may offer. The summary is not complete. When units are offered in the future, a prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of those securities and the extent to which these general provisions may apply. The specific terms of the units as described in a prospectus supplement will supplement and, if applicable, may modify or replace the general terms described in this section.

This summary and any description of units in the applicable prospectus supplement, information incorporated by reference or free writing prospectus is subject to and is qualified in its entirety by reference to the unit agreement, collateral arrangements and depositary arrangements, if applicable. We will file these documents with the SEC for incorporation by reference into this prospectus, as applicable. Please read [Where You Can Find More Information](#) and [Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference](#) for information on how to obtain a copy of a document when it is filed.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe:

the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;

any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer, or exchange of the units or of the securities composing the units;

whether the units will be issued in fully registered or global form; and

any other terms of the units.

The applicable provisions described in this section, as well as those described under [Description of Capital Stock](#), [Description of Debt Securities](#), [Description of Convertible Debt Securities](#) and [Description of Warrants](#), will apply to each unit and to each security included in each unit, respectively.

**Table of Contents****SELLING SHAREHOLDER**

This prospectus covers the offering for resale of up to 1,523,771 shares of our common stock by the selling shareholder identified below.

An aggregate of 1,523,771 shares of our common stock covered by this prospectus are held by affiliates of GA Holdings LLC, which was our sole shareholder prior to our initial public offering in August 2013. These shares were issued to GA Holdings LLC (i) in connection with our public offering of 7,500,000 common shares on June 13, 2016 and (ii) pursuant to our Dividend Reinvestment Plan.

The table below provides information about the ownership of the selling shareholder of our common shares and the maximum number of common shares that may be offered from time to time by the selling shareholder under this prospectus. The information in the table below is based on information filed with the SEC and information provided to us. The selling shareholder may currently hold or acquire at any time common shares in addition to those registered hereby. In addition, the selling shareholder may sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of some or all of its common shares in private placement transactions exempt from, or not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act. Accordingly, we cannot estimate the number or percentage of common shares that will be held by the selling shareholder upon termination of this offering. For information on the methods of sale that may be used by the selling shareholder, please read Plan of Distribution.

Information concerning the selling shareholder may change from time to time and, to the extent required, we will supplement this prospectus accordingly.

Two members of our board of directors, Reginald Jones and Niall McComiskey, are affiliated with GA Holdings LLC. Anthony Gurnee, our chief executive officer and a member of our board of directors, is the beneficial owner of 1.89% of the outstanding equity interests of GA Holdings LLC. For additional information about certain relationships and transactions between us and the selling shareholder, please read Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions in our Annual Report on Form 20-F.

We have prepared the following table and the related notes solely based on information filed with the SEC or supplied to us by the selling shareholder. We have not sought to verify such information. Additionally, the selling shareholder may have sold or transferred some or all of the common shares listed below in exempt or non-exempt transactions since the date on which the information was filed with the SEC or provided to us. Other information about the selling shareholder may change over time.

<b>Selling shareholder and Address</b>	<b>Common Shares Owned</b>	<b>Percentage of Common Shares Owned*</b>	<b>Common Shares That May be Offered Hereby</b>
GA Holdings LLC(1) <i>c/o 555 Theodore Fremd Avenue, Suite A-201 Rye, NY 10580</i>	5,702,288(2)	17.0%	1,523,771



## Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

- \* Based on a total of 33,489,686 common shares issued and outstanding on August 25, 2016.
- (1) This information is based on the Schedule 13D filed with the SEC on June 21, 2016. Approximately 98% of the limited company interests in GA Holdings LLC are owned by private investment funds managed by affiliates of Greenbriar Equity Group, LLC. Such entities and their control persons, Joel S. Beckman, Reginald L. Jones III (an Ardmore director) and Gerald Greenwald, have shared voting and investment power with respect to shares of the company held by GA Holdings LLC.
  - (2) Includes 4,178,517 common shares that are registered on Registration Statement No. 333-206501, which was declared effective by the Commission on October 2, 2015, and 1,523,771 common shares to be registered under the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

**Table of Contents**

**TAX CONSIDERATIONS**

The following is a discussion of the material Marshall Islands and U.S. federal income tax considerations relevant to an investment decision by a U.S. Holder and a Non-U.S. Holder, each as defined below, with respect to our common shares. This discussion does not purport to deal with the tax consequences of owning our common shares to all categories of investors, some of which, such as financial institutions, regulated investment companies, real estate investment trusts, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, persons holding our common stock as part of a hedging, integrated, conversion or constructive sale transaction or a straddle, traders in securities that have elected the mark-to-market method of accounting for their securities, persons liable for alternative minimum tax, persons who are investors in partnerships or other pass-through entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes, dealers in securities or currencies, U.S. Holders whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar and investors that own, actually or under applicable constructive ownership rules, 10% or more of our shares of common stock, who may be subject to special rules. This discussion deals only with holders who purchase common shares in connection with an offering and hold the common shares as a capital asset. You are encouraged to consult your own tax advisors concerning the overall tax consequences arising in your own particular situation under U.S. federal, state, local or non-U.S. law of the ownership of our common shares.

**Marshall Islands Tax Considerations**

The following are the material Marshall Islands tax consequences of our activities to us and of our common shares to our shareholders. We are incorporated in the Marshall Islands. Under current Marshall Islands law, we are not subject to tax on income or capital gains, and no Marshall Islands withholding tax will be imposed upon payments of dividends by us to our shareholders.

**U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations**

The following are the material U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. Holders and Non-U.S. Holders, each as defined below, of our common shares. The following discussion of U.S. federal income tax matters is based on the Code, judicial decisions, administrative pronouncements, and existing and proposed regulations issued by the United States Department of the Treasury (or *the Treasury Regulations*), all of which are subject to change, possibly with retroactive effect.

***U.S. Federal Income Taxation of U.S. Holders***

As used herein, the term **U.S. Holder** means a holder that for U.S. federal income tax purposes is a beneficial owner of our common shares and is an individual U.S. citizen or resident, a U.S. corporation or other U.S. entity taxable as a corporation, an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source, or a trust if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary jurisdiction over the administration of the trust and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust.

If a partnership holds our common shares, the tax treatment of a partner will generally depend upon the status of the partner and upon the activities of the partnership. If you are a partner in a partnership holding our common shares, you are encouraged to consult your tax advisor.

***Distributions***

Subject to the discussion of passive foreign investment companies below, any distributions made by us with respect to our common shares to a U.S. Holder will generally constitute dividends to the extent of our current or accumulated

earnings and profits, as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles. Distributions in excess of such earnings and profits will be treated first as a nontaxable return of capital to the extent of the U.S. Holder's tax basis in our common shares and thereafter as capital gain. Because we are not a U.S. corporation,

## **Table of Contents**

U.S. Holders that are corporations will not be entitled to claim a dividends received deduction with respect to any distributions they receive from us. Dividends paid with respect to our common shares will generally be treated as foreign source dividend income and will generally constitute passive category income for purposes of computing allowable foreign tax credits for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes.

Subject to applicable limitations, including a holding period requirement, dividends paid on our common shares to certain non-corporate U.S. Holders will generally be treated as qualified dividend income that is taxable to such U.S. Holders at preferential tax rates provided that (1) the common shares are readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States (such as the NYSE, on which our common shares are traded); and (2) we are not a passive foreign investment company for the taxable year during which the dividend is paid or the immediately preceding taxable year (which, as discussed below, we do not believe that we are or will be for any future taxable years).

There is no assurance that any dividends paid on our common shares will be eligible for these preferential rates in the hands of such non-corporate U.S. Holders, although, as described above, we expect such dividends to be so eligible provided an eligible non-corporate U.S. Holder meets all applicable requirements. Any dividends paid by us which are not eligible for these preferential rates will be taxed as ordinary income to a non-corporate U.S. Holder.

Special rules may apply to any extraordinary dividend generally, a dividend in an amount which is equal to or in excess of 10% of a shareholder's adjusted tax basis in a common share paid by us. If we pay an extraordinary dividend on our common shares that is treated as qualified dividend income, then any loss derived by certain non-corporate U.S. Holders from the sale or exchange of such common shares will be treated as long term capital loss to the extent of such dividend.

### ***Sale, Exchange or Other Disposition of Common Shares.***

Assuming we do not constitute a passive foreign investment company for any taxable year, a U.S. Holder generally will recognize taxable gain or loss upon a sale, exchange or other disposition of our common shares in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized by the U.S. Holder from such sale, exchange or other disposition and the U.S. Holder's tax basis in such shares. Such gain or loss will be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder's holding period is greater than one year at the time of the sale, exchange or other disposition. Such capital gain or loss will generally be treated as U.S. source income or loss, as applicable, for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes. Long-term capital gains of certain non-corporate U.S. Holders are currently eligible for reduced rates of taxation. A U.S. Holder's ability to deduct capital losses is subject to certain limitations.

### ***3.8% Tax on Net Investment Income***

Certain U.S. Holders that are individuals, estates, or, in certain cases, trusts, are subject to a 3.8% tax on certain investment income, including dividends and capital gains. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the effect, if any, of this tax on their ownership of our common shares.

### ***Passive Foreign Investment Company Status and Significant Tax Consequences***

Special U.S. federal income tax rules apply to a U.S. Holder that holds shares in a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. In general, we will be treated as a PFIC with respect to a U.S. Holder if, for any taxable year in which such holder holds our common shares, either

Edgar Filing: Ardmore Shipping Corp - Form 424B5

at least 75% of our gross income for such taxable year consists of passive income (e.g., dividends, interest, capital gains and rents derived other than in the active conduct of a rental business); or

at least 50% of the average value of our assets during such taxable year produce, or are held for the production of, passive income.

---

**Table of Contents**

For purposes of determining whether we are a PFIC, cash held by us will be treated as passive assets. In addition, we will be treated as earning and owning our proportionate share of the income and assets, respectively, of any of our subsidiary corporations in which we own at least 25% of the value of the subsidiary's stock. Income earned, or deemed earned, by us in connection with the performance of services would not constitute passive income. By contrast, rental income would generally constitute passive income unless we were treated under specific rules as deriving our rental income in the active conduct of a trade or business.

Based on our current and anticipated operations, we do not believe that we are currently a PFIC or will be treated as a PFIC for any future taxable year. Our belief is based principally on the position that the gross income we derive from our time or voyage chartering activities should constitute services income, rather than rental income. Accordingly, such income should not constitute passive income, and the assets that we own and operate in connection with the production of such income, in particular, the vessels, should not constitute passive assets for purposes of determining whether we are a PFIC. There is substantial legal authority supporting this position consisting of case law and IRS pronouncements concerning the characterization of income derived from time charters as services income for other tax purposes. However, there is also authority which characterizes time charter income as rental income rather than services income for other tax purposes. Accordingly, no assurance can be given that the IRS or a court of law will accept this position, and there is a risk that the IRS or a court of law could determine that we are a PFIC. In addition, although we intend to conduct our affairs in a manner to avoid being classified as a PFIC with respect to any taxable year, we cannot assure you that the nature of our operations will not change in the future.

As discussed more fully below, if we were to be treated as a PFIC for any taxable year, a U.S. Holder would be subject to different taxation rules depending on whether the U.S. Holder makes an election to treat us as a Qualified Electing Fund (or *QEF election*). As an alternative to making a QEF election, a U.S. Holder should be able to make a mark-to-market election with respect to our common shares, as discussed below. A U.S. holder of shares in a PFIC will be required to file an annual information return on IRS Form 8621 containing information regarding the PFIC as required by applicable Treasury Regulations.

***Taxation of U.S. Holders Making a Timely QEF Election***

If a U.S. Holder makes a timely QEF election, which U.S. Holder we refer to as an Electing Holder, the Electing Holder must report for U.S. federal income tax purposes its pro rata share of our ordinary earnings and net capital gain, if any, for each of our taxable years during which we are a PFIC that ends with or within the taxable year of the Electing Holder, regardless of whether distributions were received from us by the Electing Holder. No portion of any such inclusions of ordinary earnings will be treated as qualified dividend income. Net capital gain inclusions of certain non-corporate U.S. Holders would be eligible for preferential capital gains tax rates. The Electing Holder's adjusted tax basis in the common shares will be increased to reflect any income included under the QEF election. Distributions of previously taxed income will not be subject to tax upon distribution but will decrease the Electing Holder's tax basis in the common shares. An Electing Holder would not, however, be entitled to a deduction for its pro rata share of any losses that we incur with respect to any taxable year. An Electing Holder would generally recognize capital gain or loss on the sale, exchange or other disposition of our common shares. A U.S. Holder would make a timely QEF election for our common shares by filing one copy of IRS Form 8621 with its U.S. federal income tax return for the first year in which it held such shares when we were a PFIC. If we determine that we are a PFIC for any taxable year, we would provide each U.S. Holder with all necessary information in order to make the QEF election described above.

***Taxation of U.S. Holders Making a Mark-to-Market Election***

Alternatively, if we were to be treated as a PFIC for any taxable year and, as we anticipate will be the case, our shares are treated as marketable stock, a U.S. Holder would be allowed to make a mark-to-market election with respect to our common shares, provided the U.S. Holder completes and files IRS Form 8621 in accordance with the relevant instructions and related Treasury Regulations. If that election is made, the U.S.

---

**Table of Contents**

Holder generally would include as ordinary income in each taxable year the excess, if any, of the fair market value of the common shares at the end of the taxable year over such Holder's adjusted tax basis in the common shares. The U.S. Holder would also be permitted an ordinary loss in respect of the excess, if any, of the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the common shares over its fair market value at the end of the taxable year, but only to the extent of the net amount previously included in income as a result of the mark-to-market election. A U.S. Holder's tax basis in its common shares would be adjusted to reflect any such income or loss amount recognized. In a year when we are a PFIC, any gain realized on the sale, exchange or other disposition of our common shares would be treated as ordinary income, and any loss realized on the sale, exchange or other disposition of the common shares would be treated as ordinary loss to the extent that such loss does not exceed the net mark-to-market gains previously included by the U.S. Holder.

***Taxation of U.S. Holders Not Making a Timely QEF or Mark-to-Market Election***

If we were to be treated as a PFIC for any taxable year, a U.S. Holder who does not make either a QEF election or a mark-to-market election for that year, whom we refer to as a Non-Electing Holder, would be subject to special rules with respect to (i) any excess distribution (i.e., the portion of any distributions received by the Non-Electing Holder on the common shares in a taxable year in excess of 125% of the average annual distributions received by the Non-Electing Holder in the three preceding taxable years, or, if shorter, the Non-Electing Holder's holding period for the common shares), and (ii) any gain realized on the sale, exchange or other disposition of our common shares. Under these special rules:

the excess distribution or gain would be allocated ratably over the Non-Electing Holder's aggregate holding period for the common shares;

the amount allocated to the current taxable year, and any taxable year prior to the first taxable year in which we were a PFIC, would be taxed as ordinary income and would not be qualified dividend income; and

the amount allocated to each of the other taxable years would be subject to tax at the highest rate of tax in effect for the applicable class of taxpayer for that year, and an interest charge for the deemed tax deferral benefit would be imposed with respect to the resulting tax attributable to each such other taxable year.

***U.S. Federal Income Taxation of Non-U.S. Holders***

As used herein, the term Non-U.S. Holder means a holder that, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a beneficial owner of common shares (other than a partnership) that is not a U.S. Holder.

If a partnership holds our common shares, the tax treatment of a partner will generally depend upon the status of the partner and upon the activities of the partnership. If you are a partner in a partnership holding our common shares, you are encouraged to consult your tax advisor.

***Dividends on Common Shares***

A Non-U.S. Holder generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax on dividends received from us with respect to our common shares, unless that income is effectively connected with the Non-U.S. Holder's conduct of a trade or business in the United States.



***Sale, Exchange or Other Disposition of Common Shares***

A Non-U.S. Holder generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax on any gain realized upon the sale, exchange or other disposition of our common shares, unless:

the gain is effectively connected with the Non-U.S. Holder's conduct of a trade or business in the United States; or

## **Table of Contents**

the Non-U.S. Holder is an individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year of disposition and other conditions are met.

### ***Income or Gains Effectively Connected with a U.S. Trade or Business***

If the Non-U.S. Holder is engaged in a U.S. trade or business for U.S. federal income tax purposes, dividends on the common shares and gain from the sale, exchange or other disposition of the shares, that is effectively connected with the conduct of that trade or business (and, if required by an applicable income tax treaty, is attributable to a U.S. permanent establishment), will generally be subject to regular U.S. federal income tax in the same manner as discussed in the previous section relating to the taxation of U.S. Holders. In addition, in the case of a corporate Non-U.S. Holder, its earnings and profits that are attributable to the effectively connected income, which are subject to certain adjustments, may be subject to an additional branch profits tax at a rate of 30%, or at a lower rate as may be specified by an applicable U.S. income tax treaty.

### ***Backup Withholding and Information Reporting***

In general, dividend payments, or other taxable distributions, and the payment of the gross proceeds on a sale of our common shares, made within the United States to a non-corporate U.S. Holder will be subject to information reporting. Such payments or distributions may also be subject to backup withholding if the non-corporate U.S. Holder:

fails to provide an accurate taxpayer identification number;

is notified by the IRS that it has failed to report all interest or dividends required to be shown on its federal income tax returns; or

in certain circumstances, fails to comply with applicable certification requirements.

Non-U.S. Holders may be required to establish their exemption from information reporting and backup withholding with respect to dividends payments or other taxable distribution on our common shares by certifying their status on an applicable IRS Form W-8. If a Non-U.S. Holder sells our common shares to or through a U.S. office of a broker, the payment of the proceeds is subject to both U.S. backup withholding and information reporting unless the Non-U.S. Holder certifies that it is a non-U.S. person, under penalties of perjury, or it otherwise establishes an exemption. If a Non-U.S. Holder sells our common shares through a non-U.S. office of a non-U.S. broker and the sales proceeds are paid outside the United States, then information reporting and backup withholding generally will not apply to that payment. However, U.S. information reporting requirements, but not backup withholding, will apply to a payment of sales proceeds, even if that payment is made outside the United States, if a Non-U.S. Holder sells our common shares through a non-U.S. office of a broker that is a U.S. person or has some other contacts with the United States. Such information reporting requirements will not apply, however, if the broker has documentary evidence in its records that the Non-U.S. Holder is not a U.S. person and certain other conditions are met, or the Non-U.S. Holder otherwise establishes an exemption.

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Rather, a refund may generally be obtained of any amounts withheld under backup withholding rules that exceed the taxpayer's U.S. federal income tax liability by filing a timely refund claim with the IRS.

Individuals who are U.S. Holders (and to the extent specified in applicable Treasury regulations, Non-U.S. Holders and certain U.S. entities) who hold specified foreign financial assets (as defined in Section 6038D of the Code) are required to file IRS Form 8938 with information relating to the asset for each taxable year in which the aggregate value of all such assets exceeds \$75,000 at any time during the taxable year or \$50,000 on the last day of the taxable year (or such higher dollar amount as prescribed by applicable Treasury Regulations). Specified foreign financial assets would include, among other assets, our common shares, unless the common shares are held in an account maintained with a U.S. financial institution. Substantial penalties apply to any

**Table of Contents**

failure to timely file IRS Form 8938, unless the failure is shown to be due to reasonable cause and not due to willful neglect. Additionally, in the event an individual U.S. Holder (and to the extent specified in applicable Treasury Regulations, a Non-U.S. Holder or a U.S. entity) that is required to file IRS Form 8938 does not file such form, the statute of limitations on the assessment and collection of U.S. federal income taxes of such holder for the related tax year may not close until three years after the date that the required information is filed. U.S. Holders (including U.S. entities) and Non-U.S. Holders are encouraged to consult their own tax advisors regarding their reporting obligations in respect of our common shares.

**Table of Contents**

**PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION**

We or the selling shareholder may sell shares of our securities offered by this prospectus and applicable prospectus supplements from time to time on a continuous or delayed basis:

through underwriters or dealers;

through agents;

directly to one or more purchasers or other persons or entities;

through a combination of any such methods of sale; or

through other means.

We or the selling shareholder may enter into hedging transactions with respect to our securities. For example, we or the selling shareholder may:

enter into transactions involving short sales of our securities by underwriters, brokers or dealers;

sell our securities short and deliver the securities to close out short positions;

enter into option or other types of transactions that require us or the selling shareholder to deliver shares of our securities to an underwriter, broker or dealer, who will then resell or transfer the shares of securities under this prospectus; or

loan or pledge the securities to an underwriter, broker or dealer, who may sell the loaned shares of securities or, in the event of default, sell the pledged securities.

If underwriters are used to sell our securities, we and/or the selling shareholder will enter into an underwriting agreement or similar agreement with them at the time of the sale to them. In that connection, underwriters may receive compensation from us or the selling shareholder in the form of underwriting discounts or commissions and may also receive commissions from purchasers of the securities for whom they may act as agent. Any such underwriter, dealer or agent may be deemed to be an underwriter within the meaning of the Securities Act. Any shares that qualify for sale pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act may be sold under Rule 144 under the Securities Act rather than pursuant to this prospectus.

The applicable prospectus supplement relating to our securities will set forth, among other things:

the offering terms, including the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents;

the purchase price of the securities and the proceeds to us, if any, from such sale;

any underwriting discounts, concessions, commissions and other items constituting compensation to underwriters, dealers or agents;

any initial public offering price;

any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid by underwriters or dealers to other dealers; and

any securities exchanges on which the securities may be listed.

If underwriters or dealers are used in the sale by us or the selling shareholder, the shares of our securities will be acquired by the underwriters or dealers for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions in accordance with the rules of the New York Stock Exchange:

at a fixed price or prices that may be changed;

at market prices prevailing at the time of sale;

**Table of Contents**

at prices related to such prevailing market prices; or

at negotiated prices.

Our securities may be offered to the public by us or the selling shareholder either through underwriting syndicates represented by one or more managing underwriters or directly by one or more of such firms. Unless otherwise set forth in an applicable prospectus supplement, the obligations of underwriters or dealers to purchase the securities will be subject to certain conditions precedent and the underwriters or dealers will be obligated to purchase all the securities if any are purchased. Any public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or reallocated or paid by underwriters or dealers to other dealers may be changed from time to time.

Our securities may be sold directly by us or the selling shareholder from time to time, at prevailing market prices or otherwise. Our securities may also be sold through agents designated by us or the selling shareholder from time to time, at prevailing market prices or otherwise. The selling shareholder may act independently from us in making decisions with respect to the timing, manner and size of each sale. Any agent involved in the offer or sale of shares of our securities in respect of which this prospectus and a prospectus supplement is delivered will be named, and any commissions payable by us to such agent will be set forth, in the prospectus supplement. Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, any such agent will be acting on a best efforts basis for the period of its appointment.

If so indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will authorize underwriters, dealers or agents to solicit offers from certain specified institutions to purchase our securities from us at the public offering price set forth in the prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a specified date in the future. Such contracts will be subject to any conditions set forth in the prospectus supplement and the prospectus supplement will set forth the commissions payable for solicitation of such contracts. The underwriters and other persons soliciting such contracts will have no responsibility for the validity or performance of any such contracts.

Underwriters, dealers and agents may be entitled under agreements entered into with us or the selling shareholder to be indemnified by us or the selling shareholder against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution by us or the selling shareholder to payments which they may be required to make. The terms and conditions of such indemnification will be described in an applicable prospectus supplement. We may also indemnify the selling shareholder against certain liabilities in connection with sales of shares under this prospectus, including certain liabilities arising under the Securities Act.

Underwriters, dealers and agents may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for us or the selling shareholder in the ordinary course of business.

Any underwriters to whom shares of our securities are sold by us or the selling shareholder for public offering and sale may make a market in such securities, but such underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. No assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading market for our securities.

Certain persons participating in any offering of shares of our securities, whether by us or by the selling shareholder, may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of the securities offered. In connection with any such offering, the underwriters or agents, as the case may be, may purchase and sell shares of our securities in the open market. These transactions may include over-allotment and stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover syndicate short positions created in connection with the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of certain bids or purchases for the purpose of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our securities and syndicate short positions involve the sale by the underwriters or agents, as the case may be, of a greater number of shares of our

securities than they are required to purchase from us or the selling shareholder in the offering. The underwriters may also impose a penalty bid, whereby selling concessions



**Table of Contents**

allowed to syndicate members or other broker-dealers for the securities sold for their account may be reclaimed by the syndicate if such security is repurchased by the syndicate in stabilizing or covering transactions. These activities may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the securities, which may be higher than the price that might otherwise prevail in the open market, and if commenced, may be discontinued at any time. These transactions may be effected on the New York Stock Exchange, in the over-the-counter market or otherwise. These activities will be described in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement.

**Table of Contents**

**SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF CIVIL LIABILITIES**

We are incorporated under the laws of the Republic of The Marshall Islands as a corporation. The Republic of The Marshall Islands has a less developed body of securities laws as compared to the United States and provides protections for investors to a significantly lesser extent.

Most of our directors and officers and those of our controlled affiliates are residents of countries other than the United States. Substantially all of our and our subsidiaries' assets and a substantial portion of the assets of our directors and officers are located outside of the United States. As a result, it may be difficult or impossible for United States investors to effect service of process within the United States upon us or our subsidiaries or to realize against us or them judgments obtained in United States courts, including judgments predicated upon the civil liability provisions of the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States. However, we have expressly submitted to the jurisdiction of the U.S. federal and New York state courts sitting in the City of New York for the purpose of any suit, action or proceeding arising under the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States, and we have appointed Seward & Kissel LLP to accept service of process on our behalf in any such action.

Seward & Kissel LLP, our counsel as to Marshall Islands law, has advised us that there is uncertainty as to whether the courts of the Republic of The Marshall Islands would (1) recognize or enforce against us or our directors and officers judgments of courts of the United States based on civil liability provisions of applicable U.S. federal and state securities laws or (2) impose liabilities against us or our directors and officers or those of our controlled affiliates in original actions brought in the Republic of The Marshall Islands, based on these laws.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

Unless otherwise stated in any applicable prospectus supplement, Perkins Coie LLP will pass upon certain legal matters for us with respect to the offering of our securities. Unless otherwise stated in any applicable prospectus supplement, the validity of shares of our equity securities and certain other legal matters with respect to the laws of the Republic of The Marshall Islands will be passed upon for us by Seward & Kissel LLP. As appropriate, legal counsel representing any underwriters, dealers or agents will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement and may opine to certain legal matters

**EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements of Ardmore Shipping Corporation appearing in Ardmore Shipping Corporation's Annual Report on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015, as amended by Ardmore Shipping Corporation's Form 20-F/A filed with the SEC on April 8, 2016, have been audited by Ernst & Young, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report thereon included therein, and incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements are, and audited financial statements to be included in subsequently filed documents will be, incorporated herein in reliance upon the reports of Ernst & Young pertaining to such financial statements (to the extent covered by consents filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission) given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The section in Ardmore Shipping Corporation's Annual Report on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015, as amended by Ardmore Shipping Corporation's Form 20-F/A filed with the SEC on April 8, 2016, entitled "The International Product and Chemical Tanker Industry" in Item 4.B of such report has been prepared by Drewry Maritime Research, our industry expert, which has confirmed to us that such section accurately describes the international tanker market as of the dates provided therein.



**Table of Contents**

**WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

We file annual, quarterly and other reports with and furnish information to the SEC. You may inspect and copy any document we file with or furnish to the SEC at the public reference facilities maintained by the SEC at 100 F Street, NE, Washington, D.C. 20549. Copies of this material can also be obtained upon written request from the Public Reference Section of the SEC at that address, at prescribed rates, or from the SEC's website on the internet at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov) free of charge. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information on public reference rooms. You can also obtain information about us at the offices of the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., 11 Wall Street, New York, New York 10005.

As a foreign private issuer, we are exempt under the Exchange Act from, among other things, certain rules prescribing the furnishing and content of proxy statements, and our executive officers, directors and principal shareholders are exempt from the reporting and short-swing profit recovery provisions contained in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. In addition, we are not required under the Exchange Act to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as U.S. companies whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act, including the filing of quarterly reports or current reports on Form 8-K.

**Table of Contents**

**INCORPORATION OF DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE**

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference into this prospectus information that we file with the SEC. This means that we can disclose important information to you without actually including the specific information in this prospectus by referring you to other documents filed separately with the SEC. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus. Information that we later provide to the SEC, and which is deemed to be filed with the SEC, automatically will update information previously filed with the SEC, and may replace information in this prospectus.

We incorporate by reference into this prospectus the documents listed below:

our Annual Report on Form 20-F for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2015, as amended by our Form 20-F/A filed with the SEC on April 8, 2016;

all subsequent Annual Reports on Form 20-F filed with the SEC prior to the termination of this offering;

our Reports on Form 6-K filed with the SEC on May 4, 2016, which contains our unaudited condensed interim consolidated financial statements and related notes for the three months ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015, and on August 2, 2016, which contains our unaudited condensed interim consolidated financial statements and related notes for the three and six months ended June 30, 2016 and June 30, 2015;

all subsequent Reports on Form 6-K filed with the SEC prior to the termination of this offering that we identify in such Reports as being incorporated by reference into the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part; and

the description of our capital stock as described in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A filed on July 29, 2013, including any subsequent amendments or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description. These reports contain important information about us, our financial condition and our results of operations.

You may obtain any of the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus from the SEC through its public reference facilities or its website at the addresses provided above. You also may request a copy of any document incorporated by reference in this prospectus (excluding any exhibits to those documents, unless the exhibit is specifically incorporated by reference in this document), at no cost, by visiting our internet website at [www.ardmoreshipping.com](http://www.ardmoreshipping.com), or by writing or calling us at the following address:

Ardmore Shipping Corporation

Cumberland House

1 Victoria Street, 5<sup>th</sup> Floor

Hamilton, HM 11

Bermuda

(441) 405-7800

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with any information. You should not assume that the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of each document. The information contained in our website is not part of this prospectus.

In reviewing any agreements included as exhibits to the registration statement relating to the securities covered by this prospectus or to other SEC filings incorporated by reference into this prospectus or any prospectus supplement, please be aware that these agreements are attached as exhibits to provide you with information regarding their terms and are not intended to provide any other factual or disclosure information about us or the other parties to the agreements. The agreements may contain representations and warranties by

**Table of Contents**

each of the parties to the applicable agreement, which representations and warranties may have been made solely for the benefit of the other parties to the applicable agreement and, as applicable:

should not in all instances be treated as categorical statements of fact, but rather as a way of allocating the risk to one of the parties if those statements prove to be inaccurate;

have been qualified by disclosures that may have been made to the other party in connection with the negotiation of the applicable agreement, which disclosures are not necessarily reflected in the agreement;

may apply standards of materiality in a way that is different from what may be viewed as material to you or other investors; and

were made only as of the date of the applicable agreement or such other date or dates as may be specified in the agreement and are subject to more recent developments.

Accordingly, these representations and warranties may not describe the actual state of affairs as of the date they were made or at any other time and should not be relied upon by investors in considering whether to invest in our securities.

**EXPENSES**

The following table sets forth costs and expenses, other than any underwriting discounts and commissions, we expect to incur in connection with the issuance and distribution of the shares of our securities covered by this prospectus. All amounts are estimated except the SEC registration fee.

U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$ 51,460.93	
FINRA filing fees		*
Legal fees and expenses		*
Accounting fees and expenses		*
Printing costs		*
Transfer agent fees		*
New York Stock Exchange listing fee		*
Miscellaneous		*
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>*</b>

\* To be provided in a prospectus supplement or in a Report on Form 6-K subsequently incorporated by reference into this prospectus.

Table of Contents

\$

**ARDMORE SHIPPING CORPORATION**

**% Notes due 2023**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**, 2018**

*Joint Book-Running Managers*

**Morgan Stanley**

**Stifel**

*Co-Managers*

**B. Riley FBR**

**BB&T Capital Markets**

**Janney Montgomery Scott**

**Ladenburg Thalmann**



